

King Richard II.

By
William Shakespeare

INTRODUCTION AND NOTES BY

K. Dighton

With an Appendix by
F. C. Atwright, B.A., B.Sc. (Lond.)

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED
ST. MARTIN'S STREET, LONDON

1936

CONTINUED ON 190
 THE FIFTH VOLUME, 1901
 WITH APPENDICES 1901, 1902, 1903, 1904, 1905, 1906, 1907, 1908, 1909, 1910,
 1911, 1912, 1913.

CONTENTS

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION	vii
KING RICHARD II,	1
NOTES	89
INDEX TO NOTES	189
APPENDIX	197
GLOSSARY	23

INTRODUCTION.

Though first published in 1597, *Richard the Second* was probably written as early as 1593 or 1594. In the two first issues, that portion of the fourth Act which deals with the deposition of Richard, is not found. In the edition of 1608 it appears with the words on the title page, "With new additions of the Parliament Scene, and the deposing of King Richard." That these new additions belonged to the play as originally constructed seems more than probable from the strong likeness they bear in every respect to the rest of the play; and their omission in the earlier editions, and possibly in the earlier representations, may be accounted for by the subject of deposition being one peculiarly offensive to Elizabeth, whose lieges had in 1596 been exhorted by the Pope to take up arms against her. Whether our play was the one which the accomplices of Essex procured to be acted in February, 1601, in furtherance of the insurrection they had planned, cannot be certainly decided, but the balance of probabilities seems against such a position.

From the actual facts of history Shakespeare has made only one important deviation, that of representing the Queen as fully grown up, though she was in reality only some twelve years old. This deviation was of course

intentional and for dramatic purposes. In other matters he closely follows Holinshed, except that for the same purposes he represents Prince Henry as something older, and Bolingbroke as something younger, than they respectively were. The period with which our play deals is only the last two years of Richard's reign, but a glance at his earlier days will enable us more clearly to understand the circumstances which led to his downfall. Though Richard ascended the throne in 1377—being then only eleven years old—it was not till 1389 that he began to govern in reality. The intervening years had been troublous times in many ways. The French had harassed the southern coasts of England, and afterwards landed a force in Scotland to co-operate with the Scotch, Lollardism was making itself widely and acutely felt, the miserable condition of the lower classes of society culminated in a peasant revolt, and for a time, through the instrumentality of his uncle, the Duke of Gloucester, Richard was deprived of all power by the appointment of a commission of regency. Asserting himself at last, he dismissed his Council, and for the next eight years ruled wisely and successfully. Peace was made with France, Ireland was quieted, the Lollard troubles died out, and the authority of Parliament was respected. But Richard had never forgotten the treatment he had suffered at the hands of his uncle and the associate Lords. With the help of Parliament, he was at length enabled to wreak his vengeance upon them, and, free from their opposition, he next determined to free himself of Parliamentary control. With this object he procured the appointment by Parliament of a Committee empowered "to continue their sittings after its dissolu-

subject- which had been moved in the presence of the King, with all the dependences of those not determined. The aim of Richard was to supercede by means of this permanent commission the body from which it originated he at once employed it to determine causes and carry out his will, and forced from every tenant of the Crown an oath to recognize the validity of its acts and to oppose any attempts to alter or revoke them. With such an engine at his command the King was absolute, and with the appearance of absolutism the temper of his reign suddenly changed. A system of forced loans, the sale of charters of pardon to Gloucester's adherents the outlawry of seven counties at once on the plea that they had supported his enemies and must purchase pardon, a reckless interference with the course of justice, roused into new life the social and political discontent which was threatening the very existence of the Crown. Such was the condition of things when Richard availed himself of a quarrel between the Dukes of Hereford and Norfolk to banish both of them from the realm. The former, though of late seemingly taken into favour, being one of the Lords who had held the King in such harsh control, and from his popularity with the nation, a powerful rival, the latter being dangerous in consequence of his privity to the murder of Gloucester, which Richard was more than suspected of having authorized.

It is at this point that our play opens. The quarrel Out.
Play between the two Dukes had its origin in a conversation in which Norfolk confided to Hereford his suspicions of the King's intentions towards them both. This conversation being imparted by Hereford to the King, the Dukes were cited before the Commissioners already

mentioned for an investigation of the matter In Shakespeare's play they are represented as appearing in the first instance before the King, with whom are John of Gaunt, the father of Hereford, and other nobles, and the charges brought by Hereford have nothing to do with the reported conversation, but impute to Norfolk embezzlement of moneys entrusted to him for the payment of troops, instigation of all the treasons of the past eighteen years, and, above all, the murder of Gloucester Norfolk meets these charges with absolute denial, and declares his eagerness to accept the combat which Bolingbroke had offered in substantiation of his words Richard attempts reconciliation, and affects to forbid this appeal to arms, but in the end allows it, and fixes the time and place for its decision Possibly his hope is that both may perish in the encounter, but in spite of his high-sounding words, his weakness of character can suggest nothing more efficacious than procrastination The second scene shows us John of Gaunt in conversation with Gloucester's widowed Duchess Her object is to stir him up to vengeance upon Norfolk for his brother's death Gaunt, however, aware that that Duke, if guilty, was only the agent of Richard's purposes, either knows himself powerless to bring the real offender to justice, or honestly feels that it is not for a subject to compass his sovereign's death "God's is the quarrel," he says,

"for God's substitute,
His deputy anointed in his sight,
Hath caused his death, the which, if wrongfully,
Let Heaven revenge, for I may never lift
An angry arm against his minister "

seat at Plashy, Gaunt setting out for Coventry, where the combat between Norfolk and Hereford is to take place. Here the lists are prepared, the appellant and defendant present themselves ready armed, each pledges himself to the justice of his cause, and the trumpets sound for the combat to begin. At this moment Richard throws down his warder to stay proceedings. Retiring awhile with his council, he returns to announce the decision at which they had arrived—a decision that both Bolingbroke and Mowbray shall be banished from England, the former for ten years, the latter for life. This solution of his difficulty Richard had doubtless evolved in the interval he had given himself for the exercise of his kingcraft when fixing the date for the combat, though he, of course, represents it as the result of the Council's deliberations. Afraid to take any resolute measures, hampered on the one side by Bolingbroke's influence with the people, and on the other by Mowbray's knowledge of his guilty secret, he as usual resorts to procrastination, and fancies that he has cleverly extricated himself from the danger of pronouncing capital sentence upon either party. Bolingbroke affects to accept the verdict with loyal submission, though he doubtless does so knowing that the moment has not yet come for the realization of the ambitious hopes he cherishes. Norfolk, on the other hand, vigorously protests against the severity of his doom, though beyond the words

“A dearer merit, not so deep a maim
As to be cast forth in the common air,
Have I deserved at your highness' hands,”

felt—he does not attempt to shield himself from condemnation by implicating the King in the guilt of Gloucester's murder Richard, however, not satisfied as to the efficacy of mere banishment, calls upon the two Dukes to take an oath that they never shall

“ Embrace each other's love in banishment,
Nor never look upon each other's face,
Nor never write, regreet, nor reconcile
This lowering tempest of your home bred hate,
Nor never by advised purpose meet,
To plot, contrive or complot any ill
'Gainst us, our state, our subjects, or our land ”

This precious assurance being obtained, this covenant drawn up as though between parties to some action at law, Richard conscious of the danger he may be provoking by too great rigour towards the powerful house of Lancaster, reduces Bolingbroke's term of banishment by four years Equally incapable of real vigour and real justice, he can only temporize, with a vague hope that circumstances may occur to give him a security which he cannot conquer for himself The Scene closes with a pathetic, but vain, attempt on Gaunt's part to reconcile his son to the misery of exile A load is now lifted from Richard's mind, though he shows in the next Scene how anxious he is as to the regard in which Bolingbroke is held by the common people, and as to the designs he may mature in his exile He has, however, gone, and for the immediate present Richard feels himself secure The matter now pressing most urgently upon his attention is the subjugation of the Irish rebels, and, as his coffers are pretty well exhausted, he does not hesitate to replenish them by farming out the revenues of England,

tates the seizure of Gaunt's estates so soon as he shall die, and prays that God may put it

“in his physician's mind
To help him to his grave immediately ”

This pious prayer is quickly followed by a summons to the death-bed of Gaunt, who, now careless of earthly consequences, soundly rates his King upon his various acts of misgovernment. For a while Richard listens with outward patience to the scathing words, but at length his passionate anger flames out, and he tells Gaunt,

“ Wert thou not brother to great Edward's son,
This tongue, that runs so soundly in thy head,
Should run thy head from thy unreverent shoulders ”

But Gaunt is beyond fear. Boldly accusing Richard of Gloucester's death, and challenging him to wreak like vengeance upon himself, he is borne out in a dying state, Northumberland entering immediately afterwards to report that all is over. Richard greets the announcement with the words,

“The ripest fruit first falls, and so doth he
His time is spent, our pilgrimage must be”,

and as if he has done all that is necessary for the occasion by giving expression to a sentimental commonplace, recklessly follows up the determination he had proclaimed by seizing to himself

“The plate, coin, revenues, and moveables
Whereof our uncle Gaunt did stand possess'd.”

It is in vain that York, himself a man of no stern moral fibre, eloquently denounces such an act. His appeal is not merely to considerations of honour and justice, but

considerations of policy and self-love, and when the headstrong monarch treats his remonstrance with contempt, he quits the scene rather than be a party to such iniquity His opposition and temporary defection are matters of no great concern, and Richard appears to know that it will be easy enough to bring him round again But it is a very different thing to have exasperated beyond all hope of reconciliation the powerful lords who, with Northumberland at their head, are already intriguing for Bolingbroke's return, and now, binding themselves to active measures, set out to meet him at Ravenspurgh The Scene is followed by one in which the Queen, bewailing her husband's absence in Ireland, is greeted with the news that Bolingbroke having landed, has been joined by Northumberland and the associate lords York, to whom the government of the country has been delegated, prepares to assert the King's supremacy But he is weighed down by his knowledge of the hatred in which Richard is held alike by peer and commoner, and also by the feeling that on whichever side he ranges himself it is against a kinsman We now come to Bolingbroke's march to meet York Accompanied by Northumberland, and with their combined forces rapidly swelling, he is joined on the road by Northumberland's son, Harry Percy, and presently by Ross and Willoughby also These lords have scarcely been welcomed when Berkly, deputed by York to challenge Bolingbroke's progress, appears on the scene, and is quickly followed by York himself Putting on a show of determination, York sternly rebukes his nephew's audacity, and brands him as rebel and traitor to his sovereign lord Bolingbroke's answer is to claim the rights, legally his, while Northumberland takes upon him-

that Bolingbroke has come York, seeing that words are vain, and knowing that deeds are beyond him with such forces as are at his command, agrees to stand neuter between the opposing parties, and is compelled by the insurgents to accompany them to Bristol Castle One of Richard's supports has therefore now given way Another is shortly to fail him Salisbury, sent over from Ireland, has collected a strong force of Welshmen in his King's defence, and but for Richard's lingering in Ireland, things might even yet turn in his favour But with his fatal irresolution he delays for nearly a fortnight longer, and the Welshmen weary of waiting, and finding that nearly the whole of England has espoused Bolingbroke's cause, at last disband themselves and go over to Bolingbroke Even the troops brought back from Ireland quickly begin to melt away, and Richard in a few days stands bare of all support It is at this point that the second Act closes With the beginning of the third Act, Bolingbroke asserts the power which he now knows to be securely his by ordering the death of two of Richard's chief favourites, Bushy and Green, on whom he casts the blame of having led the King to his ruin, and we then pass to Richard's arrival at Barkloughly Castle In an outburst of exaggerated sentiment, he adjures his native earth, that land for which he had thought no burdens too heavy, to refuse all sustenance to his foes

“Feed not thy sovereign's foes, my gentle earth,
Nor with thy sweets comfort his ravenous sense,
But let thy spiders, that suck up thy venom,
And heavy-gaited toads, lie in their way,
Doing annoyance to the treacherous feet,
Which with usurping steps do trample thee

And when they from thy bosom pluck a flower,
Guard it, I pray thee, with a lurking adder,
Whose double tongue may with a mortal touch
Throw death upon thy sovereign's enemies "

To this the practical Bishop of Carlisle makes answer in effect that sentiment however graceful in its form is out of place now, that if they would recover lost ground they must be up and doing,—a truth which Aumerle further enforces in words that Richard cannot misunderstand. Richard, however, sees only another opportunity for declamation. His theme is the divinity that doth hedge a king: the sun of majesty will arise and disperse the gloomy mists of misfortune, Bolingbroke may be upheld by any number of mere men, but angels will fight in behalf of "the deputy elected by the Lord." His heroics are interrupted by the entrance of Salisbury to announce that one day's delay has cost the king the support of the Welsh musters. The brave words just uttered die out from his lips, the material agency he a moment ago affected to despise is recognized at its full value, and despair takes the place of vapouring confidence. Aumerle endeavours to put heart into him, and for a short instant he recovers his boastful attitude. But though affecting to place his trust in the name of king, it is upon the forces he supposes to be with York that he really relies. Scroop now enters preluding further bad news, and Richard proclaims his fortitude against all evils that may be awaiting him. The tale, however, of Bolingbroke's triumphal progress provokes an outburst of wrath at the treachery to his cause which he assumes his favourites, those "snakes, in my heart-

ence, Richard moralizes the situation "into a thousand similes," his text being the vanity of kingly pomp. He is a second time reproached by the Bishop's practical wisdom, and a second time regains a momentary courage. But Scroop has more calamity to announce, the defection, to wit, of York. All hope is now past, and Richard's consciousness of this fact is recognized in a petulant rebuke to Aumerle for having tried to comfort him.

" Beshrew thee, cousin, which didst lead me forth
Of that sweet way I was into despair !
What say you now ? what comfort have we now ?
By heaven, I'll hate him everlastingly
That bids me be of comfort any more "

From this alternation of braggart words and unmanly prostration, we pass to Bolingbroke's effective action. With Northumberland, York, and others, he is before Flint Castle, Richard's last retreat. By Northumberland he sends word that if his banishment is repealed and his estates restored, he is ready to make complete submission to the king; if not, he will use the power that circumstances have given into his hands. The messenger is received with a speech of no little dignity, though with threats of consequences which Richard knows he is impotent to put in force. Delivering his message, Northumberland personally pledges himself that Bolingbroke aims at nothing further than his legal rights. These are at once conceded, and Bolingbroke's envoy bears back the intelligence. Richard, on his departure, so far from maintaining the show of confidence with which he had greeted Northumberland, bemoans the necessity of having to use fair words

sentence of dread punishment", and on hearing of Northumberland's return prepares himself for a spontaneous surrender of his crown, decking out his intention in a parade of fanciful humility and resignation. Bolingbroke has sent to desire a conference, and at their meeting, Richard, unsolicited, yields himself into his rival's hands to be disposed of as it may seem fit to him. Without disclosing his final intentions, Bolingbroke accepts Richard's offer to accompany him to London, and the Scene then closes. The next Scene is in the Duke of York's garden at Langley, where the Queen and her attendants overhear a conversation between the gardener and his servants. The first servant, bidden to busy himself with his duties, demurs to the necessity of maintaining "law, form, and due proportion" in their petty world, while the great world around them, the realm of England, is allowed to run into such riotous disorder. The gardener rebukes him, showing how, for want of timely control of the plants under his care, the gardener of England has brought ruin upon himself.

"We at time of year

Do wound the bark, the skin of our fruit trees,
Lest, being over proud in sap and blood,
With too much riches it confound itself
Had he done so to great and growing men,
They might have lived to bear, and he to taste
Their fruits of duty. Superfluous branches
We lop away, that bearing boughs may live
Had he done so, himself had borne the crown,
Which waste of idle hours hath quite thrown down."

The Queen coming forward, bitterly attacks the gar-

downfall, but finding that his information is only too accurate, at once prepares to join the King in London. The opening Scene of the Fourth Act, in which Aumerle is charged by Bagot with Gloucester's death,—an accusation substantiated by Fitzwater and another Lord,—serves two purposes. By making it appear that Richard had instigated the murder, an additional reason is given for depriving him of his crown, while the importance thus attached to Aumerle's subsequent plot against Bolingbroke furnishes a fresh pretext for taking the life of a master served by such dangerous instruments. The question of Aumerle's guilt is left to be decided by the issue of the combat to which he has challenged his accusers, and at this point York enters to announce Richard's resignation, and salutes Bolingbroke as King. Against his acceptance of the throne a vigorous protest is made by the sturdy Bishop of Carlisle, who forcibly predicts the woes that shall arise from the usurpation,—but with no other result than his arrest for capital treason. Bolingbroke now gives orders for Richard to be brought before him in order that

"in common view
 He may surrender so we shall proceed
 Without suspicion"

Richard enters, and after a good deal of self-compassion and characteristic trifling, accepts his fate, Bolingbroke then giving orders for his own coronation on the following Wednesday. Richard's progress to the Tower opens the fifth Act, the Queen waiting on the road to meet him. Their interview is interrupted by the entrance of Northumberland, who informs Richard that Bolingbroke

Castle, while his Queen is to be sent back to France. Richard, in a speech of much dignity, foretells Northumberland's revolt from Bolingbroke,—a prediction speedily to be verified,—and after a tender farewell, the King and Queen are separated. Two Scenes are next taken up with the discovery of a plot against Bolingbroke, in which Aumerle is concerned, the Duke of York, his father, urging condign and speedy punishment, the Duchess pleading with vociferous energy for her son's pardon. For the father's loyalty the son is forgiven, and Aumerle's further life justifies the clemency shown him, he perishing bravely in the van at Agincourt. Whether the discovery of this plot only sharpens Bolingbroke's apprehension of the danger in his path so long as Richard is allowed to live, the danger of leaving a rallying point for discontented spirits, or whether it had all along been determined to get rid of him, we have in the next Scene Sir Pierce of Exton openly declaring Bolingbroke's desire for Richard's death, in almost the words with which Henry the Second prompted the murder of Becket, and John tempted Hubert to make away with Arthur. But we are to see Richard once again, to see him in his dungeon at Pomfret Castle. And here, though with the dark shadow of death closely hovering round, we find him as much in love as ever with trivialities and phantoms. Torturing his ingenuity to hammer out appropriate similes, gratifying his imagination with fanciful analogies, solacing himself by putting together intricate word-puzzles, he seems to regard life as nothing more serious than a fantastic dream. Strenuous sorrow, poignant regret, deep-seated hatred, are emotions of which his flabby soul is incapable. For the faithful groom who seeks him out

him he can talk about a favourite horse, petulantly complaining of its disloyalty in having submitted to Bolingbroke as a rider, and finding in the incident material for the luxury of self-reproach. But his end is at hand. Exton, bent on purchasing Bolingbroke's good-will, enters with his murderous agents. Their assault upon his person calls up Richard's spirit, two of his assailants he kills before Exton's sword can lay him low, and his death at all events is not ignoble. Exton, though struck with remorse at his own deed, causes the confined body to be borne into Bolingbroke's presence, but for all reward is met by the sternly contemptuous greeting,

“ though I did wish him dead,
I hate the murderer, love him murdered
The guilt of conscience take thou for thy labour,
But neither my good word, nor princely favour
With Cain go wander through the shades of night,
And never show thy head by day or light ”

Richard, then, is shown to us as a king without any of the kingly attributes, except that of a factitious dignity, as a man without any manly qualities, except those of an affectionate heart and a fair share of personal courage. Curbed and checked in his earlier days by forces too strong to struggle against, he has not been disciplined into firmness of determination, surrounded by difficulties and intrigue, he has learned nothing of political prudence. His foresight consists in blinding his eyes to what is coming, his wisdom is to procrastinate in the hope that something miraculously advantageous may fight upon his side. Amidst a throng of turbulent nobles he knows not how to bind to himself any serviceable ally but leaning with weak affection upon any

to alienate one by one those supports which might have given stability to his power. All the vices that Malcolm in his conversation with Macduff ascribes to himself might have been "portable, with other graces weigh'd", his insincerity, born with him, his arbitrariness, to some extent the result of circumstances, need not have cost him his crown if counterbalanced by strength of purpose, keenness of vision, and promptitude of hand. Greater tyrants have held undisturbed sway, far worse monsters have died in their beds. But such folly, such vacillation, such blindness as his are incompatible with the retention of power. Taught by bitter experience that his favouritism has estranged those who were naturally his strength, with the memory of the smouldering elements of disaffection that had already burst forth in the earlier days of his reign, fresh from an act of tyranny in the banishment of Norfolk and Bolingbroke, he has the folly to leave England in order to quell a rising in Ireland, and the more incredible folly to provoke to open wrath the whole nobility of the kingdom by his confiscation of Bolingbroke's estates. If near relationship was no hindrance to an act of such violence, what check could there be in the case of those who boasted no such tie? If the powerful house of Lancaster was not safe from depredation, who that was worth the plundering could hope to escape? Still, even this piece of madness was scarcely more damning to his cause than the vacillation which hindered his return from Ireland. Swift measures might have repressed the rebellion, for a time at all events, a stern assertion of that kingly might he was so ready to brag about would have struck awe into

stately words are pleasant Providence will extricate him from the slough into which he has fallen, and human prudence is but a poor thing Great calamities may paralyse the firmest minds, but Richard's faculties are not paralysed, for they have not stubbornness and consistency to suffer such shock His courage merely dissolves, liquefies, evaporates in wordy laments and graceful trivialities, his mind postures and attitudinizes on its road to extinction In strange contrast to this jelly-fish organization is the "firm set earth" of Bolingbroke's temperament Earthy in his aspirations, with nothing very exalted, nothing very lovable, about him, he still knows what he wants, knows how his desires are to be attained, and goes straightforward to his point He can wait, he can flatter, can use dissimulation, but his waiting is not dilatoriness, in his flattery he does not descend to unworthy familiarity, under his dissimulation he masks his designs, yet cloaks no treachery He has come to seek his own, and if, in the process, events indicate that he may indulge in a more extended ambition, he is ready to be guided by events The deposition of Richard is as much forced upon him as sought by him, and every step he takes is taken with deliberate, well-planned, advance Towards the confederate lords he is gracious without enthusiasm, a courageous opponent, like the Bishop of Carlisle, he punishes with rigour and yet with politic generosity, for a weak and fallen foe, like Richard, he has a feeling of pity, contemptuous as that pity may be Self-contained and self-assured, he has no need to be vindictive or petty Of his country's wrongs and sufferings he has as clear a perception as of

which sees that self alone cannot be safely gratified To be really powerful himself, he knows that he must make his country powerful and prosperous, so far as good government can effect that end To ensure permanence to his rule, it is essential that tranquillity and justice should prevail throughout the land His government of England, however, is outside the scope of the present play, and Shakespeare's delineation of his character is necessarily incomplete Fully to comprehend that character, and with it the course of events that Richard's reign initiates, *Richard the Second* must be read in connection with *Henry the Fourth* and *Henry the Fifth* The first play, depicting the remedy of force, the attempt by usurpation to set right the time that is out of joint, foreshadows the intestine troubles which *Henry the Fourth* shows us in full operation, while in *Henry the Fifth* the King is still haunted by the dread of heavenly retribution upon the crime of his father by which he himself still profits, and by his invasion of France endeavours to engage the attention of his countrymen and avert their eyes from a too close scrutiny into the tenure by which he holds the crown In my Introduction to *Henry the Fifth* I have endeavoured to set out more fully the sequence of events in the three plays, and to this I may perhaps be allowed to refer my readers

-

THE TRAGEDY OF
KING RICHARD II.

-

DRAMATIS PERSONÆ

KING RICHARD the Second

JOHN OF GAUNT, Duke of Lancaster, }
EDMUND OF LANGLEY, Duke of York, }uncles to the King

HENRY, surnamed BOLINGBROKE, Duke of Hereford, son to

John of Gaunt, afterwards KING HENRY IV

DUKE OF AUMERLE, son to the Duke of York

THOMAS MOWBRAY, Duke of Norfolk

DUKE OF SURREY

EARL OF SALISBURY

LORD BERKELEY

BUSHY, }
BAGOT, }servants to King Richard
GREEN, }

EARL OF NORTHUMBERLAND

HENRY PERCY, surnamed Hotspur, his son

LORD ROSS

LORD WILLOUGHBY

LORD FITZWATER

Bishop of Carlisle

Abbot of Westminster

Lord Marshal

SIR STEPHEN SCROOP

SIR PIERCE of Exton

Captain of a band of Welshmen

QUEEN to King Richard

DUCHESS OF YORK

DUCHESS OF GLOUCESTER

Lady attending on the Queen

Lords, Herald, Officers, Soldiers, two Gardeners, Keeper,
Messenger, Groom, and other Attendants

SCENE *England and Wales*

THE TRAGEDY OF
KING RICHARD II

ACT I

SCENE I *London* KING RICHARD'S palace

Enter KING RICHARD, JOHN OF GAUNT, *with other* Nobles
and Attendants

K Rich Old John of Gaunt, time-honour'd Lancaster,
Hast thou, according to thy oath and band,
Brought hither Henry Hereford thy bold son,
Here to make good the boisterous late appeal,
Which then our leisure would not let us hear,
Against the Duke of Norfolk, Thomas Mowbray ?

Gaunt I have, my liege

K Rich Tell me, moreover, hast thou sounded him,
If he appeal the duke on ancient malice ,
Or worthily, as a good subject should, 10
On some known ground of treachery in him ?

Gaunt As near as I could sift him on that argument,
On some apparent danger seen in him
Aim'd at your highness, no inveterate malice

K Rich Then call them to our presence ; face to face,

High-stomach'd are they both, and full of ire,
In rage deaf as the sea, hasty as fire

Enter BOLINGBROKE and MOWBRAY

Boling Many years of happy days befall 20
My gracious sovereign, my most loving liege !

Mow Each day still better other's happiness ,
Until the heavens, envying earth's good hap,
Add an immortal title to your crown !

K Rich We thank you both yet one but flatters us
As well appeareth by the cause you come ,
Namely, to appeal each other of high treason
Cousin of Hereford, what dost thou object
Against the Duke of Norfolk, Thomas Mowbray ?

Boling First, heaven be the record to my speech ! 30
In the devotion of a subject's love,

Tendering the precious safety of my prince,
And free from other misbegotten hate,
Come I appelland to this princely presence
Now, Thomas Mowbray, do I turn to thee,
And mark my greeting well , for what I speak
My body shall make good upon this earth,
Or my divine soul answer it in heaven

Thou art a traitor and a miscreant,
Too good to be so and too bad to live, 40

Since the more fair and crystal is the sky,
The uglier seem the clouds that in it fly
Once more, the more to aggravate the note,
With a foul traitors name stuff I thy throat ,
And wish, so please my sovereign, ere I move,
What my tongue speaks my right drawn sword may prove

Mow Let not my cold words here accuse my zeal
'Tis not the trial of a woman's war,
The bitter clamour of two eager tongues,
Can arbitrate this cause betwixt us twain , 50

Yet can I not of such tame patience boast
As to be hush'd and nought at all to say
First, the fair reverence of your highness curbs me
From giving reins and spurs to my free speech,
Which else would post until it had return'd
These terms of treason doubled down his throat
Setting aside his high blood's royalty,
And let him be no kinsman to my liege,
I do defy him, and I spit at him, 60
Call him a slanderous coward and a villain
Which to maintain I would allow him odds,
And meet him, were I tied to run afoot
Even to the frozen ridges of the Alps,
Or any other ground inhabitable,
Where ever Englishman durst set his foot
Mean time let this defend my loyalty,
By all my hopes, most falsely doth he lie
Boling Pale trembling coward, there I throw my gage,
Disclaiming here the kindred of the king, 70
And lay aside my high blood's royalty,
Which fear, not reverence, makes thee to except
If guilty dread have left thee so much strength
As to take up mine honour's pawn, then stoop
By that and all the rites of knighthood else,
Will I make good against thee, arm to arm,
What I have spoke, or thou canst worse devise
Mow I take it up, and by that sword I swear,
Which gently laid my knighthood on my shoulder,
I'll answer thee in any fair degree, 80
Or chivalrous design of knightly trial
And when I mount, alive may I not light,
If I be traitor or unjustly fight !
K Rich What doth our cousin lay to Mowbray's charge ?
It must be great that can inherit us
So much as of a thought of ill in him

That Mowbray hath received eight thousand nobles
In name of lendings for your highness' soldiers,
The which he hath detain'd for lewd employments, 90
Like a false traitor and injurious villain
Besides I say and will in battle prove,
Or here or elsewhere to the furthest verge
That ever was survey'd by English eye,
That all the treasons for these eighteen years
Complotted and contrived in this land
Fetch from false Mowbray their first head and spring
Further I say and further will maintain
Upon his bad life to make all this good,
That he did plot the Duke of Gloucester's death, 100
Suggest his soon-believing adversaries,
And consequently, like a traitor coward,
Sluic'd out his innocent soul through streams of blood
Which blood, like sacrificing Abel's, cries,
Even from the tongueless caverns of the earth,
To me for justice and rough chastisement ,
And, by the glorious worth of my descent,
This arm shall do it, or this life be spent

K Rich How high a pitch his resolution soars !
Thomas of Norfolk, what say'st thou to this ? 110

Mow O, let my sovereign turn away his face
And bid his ears a little while be deaf,
Till I have told this slander of his blood,
How God and good men hate so foul a liar

K Rich Mowbray, impartial are our eyes and ears
Were he my brother, nay, my kingdom's heir,
As he is but my father's brother's son,
Now, by my sceptre's awe, I make a vow,
Such neighbour nearness to our sacred blood
Should nothing privilege him, nor partialize 120
The unstooping firmness of my upright soul

Mow Then, Bolingbroke, as low as to thy heart,
Through the false passage of thy throat, thou heest
Three parts of that receipt I had for Calais
Disbursed I duly to his highness' soldiers ,
The other part reserved I by consent,
For that my sovereign liege was in my debt
Upon remainder of a dear account, 130
Since last I went to France to fetch his queen
Now swallow down that lie For Gloucester's death,
I slew him not , but to my own disgrace
Neglected my sworn duty in that case
For you, my noble Lord of Lancaster,
The honourable father to my foe,
Once did I lay an ambush for your life,
A trespass that doth vex my grieved soul ,
But ere I last received the sacrament
I did confess it, and exactly begg'd 140
Your grace's pardon, and I hope I had it
This is my fault as for the rest appeal'd,
It issues from the rancour of a villain,
A recreant and most degenerate traitor
Which in myself I boldly will defend ,
And interchangeably hurl down my gage
Upon this overweening traitor's foot,
To prove myself a loyal gentleman
Even in the best blood chamber'd in his bosom
In haste whereof, most heartily I pray 150
Your highness to assign our trial day

K Rich Wrath-kindled gentlemen, be ruled by me
Let's purge this choler without letting blood
Thus we prescribe, though no physician ,
Deep malice makes too deep incision ;
Forget, forgive , conclude and be agreed ,
Our doctors say this is no month to bleed

Gaunt To be a make-peace shall become my age 160
 Throw down, my son, the Duke of Norfolk's gage

K Rich And, Norfolk, throw down his

Gaunt When, Harry, when ?
 Obedience bids I should not bid again

K Rich Norfolk, throw down, we bid , there is no boot

Mow Myself I throw, dread sovereign, at thy foot
 My life thou shalt command, but not my shame
 The one my duty owes , but my fair name,
 Despite of death that lives upon my grave,
 To dark dishonour's use thou shalt not have
 I am disgraced, impeach'd and baffled here, 170
 Pierced to the soul with slander's venom'd spear
 The which no balm can cure but his heart-blood
 Which breathed this poison

K Rich Rage must be withstood
 Give me his gage lions make leopards tame

Mow Yea, but not change his spots take but my shame,
 And I resign my gage My dear dear lord,
 The purest treasure mortal times afford
 Is spotless reputation that away,
 Men are but gilded loam or painted clay
 A jewel in a ten-times-barr'd-up chest 180
 Is a bold spirit in a loyal breast

Mine honour is my life , both grow in one ,
 Take honour from me, and my life is done
 Then, dear my liege, mine honour let me try ,
 In that I live and for that will I die

K Rich Cousin, throw up your gage , do you begin
Boling O, God defend my soul from such deep sin !
 Shall I seem crest-fall'n in my father's sight ?

Or with pale beggar-fear impeach my height
 Before this out dared dastard ? Ere my tongue 190
 Shall wound my honour with such feeble wrong,

And spit it bleeding in his high disgrace,
Where shame doth harbour, even in Mowbray's face

[*Exit Gaunt*]

K Rich We were not born to sue, but to command ,
Which since we cannot do to make you friends,
Be ready, as your lives shall answer it,
At Coventry, upon Saint Lambert's day
There shall your swords and lances arbitrate 200
The swelling difference of your settled hate
Since we can not atone you, we shall see
Justice design the victor's chivalry
Lord marshal, command our officers at arms
Be ready to direct these home alarms [*Exeunt*]

SCENE II *The Duke of Lancaster's palace*

Enter JOHN OF GAUNT with the DUCHESS OF GLOUCESTER

Gaunt Alas, the part I had in Woodstock's blood
Doth more solicit me than your exclams,
To stir against the butchers of his life '
But since correction lieth in those hands
Which made the fault that we cannot correct,
Put we our quarrel to the will of heaven ,
Who, when they see the hours ripe on earth,
Will rain hot vengeance on offenders' heads

Duch Finds brotherhood in thee no sharper spur ?
Hath love in thy old blood no living fire ? 10
Edward's seven sons, whereof thyself art one,
Were as seven vials of his sacred blood,
Or seven fair branches springing from one root
Some of those seven are dried by nature's course,
Some of those branches by the Destinies cut ,
But Thomas, my dear lord, my life my Gloucester

Is crack'd, and all the precious liquor spilt,
Is hack'd down, and his summer leaves all faded, 20
By envy's hand and murder's bloody axe
Ah, Gaunt, his blood was thine ! that bed, that womb,
That metal, that self mould, that fashion'd thee
Made him a man , and though thou livest and breathest,
Yet art thou slain in him thou dost consent
In some large measure to thy father's death,
In that thou seest thy wretched brother die,
Who was the model of thy father's life
Call it not patience, Gaunt , it is despair
In suffering thus thy brother to be slaughter'd, 30
Thou showest the naked pathway to thy life,
Teaching stern murder how to butcher thee
That which in mean men we intitle patience
Is pale cold cowardice in noble breasts
What shall I say ? to safeguard thine own life,
The best way is to venge my Gloucester's death
Gaunt God's is the quarrel , for God's substitute,
His deputy anointed in His sight,
Hath caused his death the which if wrongfully,
Let heaven revenge , for I may never lift 40
An angry arm against His minister
Duch Where then, alas, may I complain myself ?
Gaunt To God, the widow's champion and defence
Duch Why, then, I will Farewell, old Gaunt
Thou goest to Coventry, there to behold
Our cousin Hereford and fell Mowbray fight
O, sit my husband's wrongs on Hereford's spear,
That it may enter butcher Mowbray's breast !
Or, if misfortune miss the first career,
Be Mowbray's sins so heavy in his bosom, 50
That they may break his foaming courser's back,
And throw the rider headlong in the lists.

With her companion grief must end her life

Gaunt Sister, farewell , I must to Coventry
As much good stay with thee as go with me '

Duch Yet one word more grief boundeth where it falls,
Not with the empty hollowness, but weight
I take my leave before I have begun, 60
For sorrow ends not when it seemeth done
Commend me to thy brother, Edmund York
Lo, this is all —nay, yet depart not so ,
Though this be all, do not so quickly go ,
I shall remember more Bid him—ah, what ?—
With all good speed at Plashy visit me
Alack, and what shall good old York there see
But empty lodgings and unfurnish'd walls,
Unpeopled offices, untrodden stones ?
And what hear there for welcome but my groans ? 70
Therefore commend me , let him not come there
To seek out sorrow that dwells every where
Desolate, desolate, will I hence and die
The last leave of thee takes my weeping eye [*Exeunt*

SCENE III *The lists at Coventry*

Enter the Lord Marshal and the DUKE OF AUMERLE

Mar My Lord Aumerle, is Harry Hereford arm'd ?

Aum Yea, at all points , and longs to enter in

Mar The Duke of Norfolk, sprightly and bold,
Stays but the summons of the appellant's trumpet

Aum Why, then, the champions are prepared, and stay
For nothing but his majesty's approach

*The trumpets sound, and the KING enters with his nobles,
GAUNT, BUSHY, BAGOT, GREEN, and others When they
are set, enter MOWBRAY in arms, defendant, with a Herald*

The cause of his arrival here in arms
Ask him his name and orderly proceed
To swear him in the justice of his cause 10

Mar In God's name and the king's, say who thou art
And why thou comest thus knightly clad in arms,
Against what man thou comest, and what thy quarrel
Speak truly, on thy knighthood and thy oath,
As so defend thee heaven and thy valour !

Mow My name is Thomas Mowbray, Duke of Norfolk,
Who hither come engaged by my oath—
Which God defend a knight should violate !—
Both to defend my loyalty and truth
To God, my king and my succeeding issue, 20
Against the Duke of Hereford that appeals me,
And, by the grace of God and this mine arm,
To prove him, in defending of myself,
A traitor to my God, my king, and me
And as I truly fight, defend me heaven !

*The trumpets sound Enter BOLINGBROKE, appellant, in
armour, with a Herald*

K Rich Marshal, ask yonder knight in arms,
Both who he is and why he cometh hither
Thus plated in habiliments of war,
And formally, according to our law,
Depose him in the justice of his cause 30

Mar What is thy name? and wherefore comest thou
hither,
Before King Richard in his royal lists?
Against whom comest thou? and what's thy quarrel?
Speak like a true knight, so defend thee heaven !

Boling Harry of Hereford, Lancaster and Derby
Am I, who ready here do stand in arms,
To prove, by God's grace and my body's valour,

To God of heaven, King Richard and to me , 40
And as I truly fight, defend me heaven !

Mar On pain of death, no person be so bold
Or daring-hardy as to touch the lists,
Except the marshal and such officers
Appointed to direct these fair designs

Boling Lord marshal, let me kiss my sovereign's hand,
And bow my knee before his majesty
For Mowbray and myself are like two men
That vow a long and weary pilgrimage ,
Then let us take a ceremonious leave 50
And loving farewell of our several friends

Mar The appellant in all duty greets your highness,
And craves to kiss your hand and take his leave

K Rich We will descend and fold him in our arms
Cousin of Hereford, as thy cause is right,
So be thy fortune in this royal fight !
Farewell, my blood , which if to-day thou shed,
Lament we may, but not revenge thee dead

Boling O, let no noble eye profane a tear
For me, if I be goied with Mowbray's spear 60
As confident as is the falcon's flight
Against a bird, do I with Mowbray fight
My loving lord, I take my leave of you ,
Of you, my noble cousin, Lord Aumerle ,
Not sick, although I have to do with death,
But lusty young, and cheerly drawing breath
Lo, as at English feasts, so I regret
The daintiest last, to make the end most sweet
O thou, the earthly author of my blood,
Whose youthful spirit, in me regenerate, 70
Doth with a twofold vigour lift me up
To reach at victory above my head,
Add proof unto mine armour with thy prayers ,

And furbish new the name of John a Gaunt,
Even in the lusty haviour of his son

Gaunt God in thy good cause make thee prosperous !
Be swift like lightning in the execution ,
And let thy blows, doubly redoubled, 80
Fall like amazing thunder on the casque
Of thy adverse pernicious enemy

Rouse up thy youthful blood, be valiant and live

Boling Mine innocency and Saint George to thrive !

Mow However God or fortune cast my lot,
There lives or dies, true to King Richard's throne,
A loyal, just and upright gentleman
Never did captive with a freer heart
Cast off his chains of bondage and embrace
His golden uncontroll'd enfranchisement, 90

More than my dancing soul doth celebrate
This feast of battle with mine adversary
Most mighty liege, and my companion peers,
Take from my mouth the wish of happy years
As gentle and as jocund as to jest

• Go I to fight truth hath a quiet breast

K Rich Farewell, my lord securely I espy
Virtue and valour couched in thine eye
Order the trial, marshal, and begin

Mar Harry of Hereford, Lancaster and Derby, 100
Receive thy lance , and God defend the right !

Boling Strong as a tower in hope, I cry amen

Mar Go bear this lance to Thomas, Duke of Norfolk

First Her Harry of Hereford, Lancaster and Derby,
Stands here for God, his sovereign and himself,
On pain to be found false and recreant,
To prove the Duke of Norfolk, Thomas Mowbray,
A traitor to his God, his king and him ,
And dares him to set forward to the fight

Sec Her Here standeth Thomas Mowbray, Duke of No.-

On pain to be found false and recreant,
Both to defend himself and to approve
Henry of Hereford, Lancaster, and Derby,
To God, his sovereign and to him disloyal,
Courageously and with a free desire
Attending but the signal to begin

Mar Sound, trumpets, and set forward, combatants

[*A charge sounded*

Stay, the king hath thrown his warder down

A Rich Let them lay by their helmets and their spears,
And both return back to their chairs again 120

Withdraw with us and let the trumpets sound
While we return these dukes what we decree

[*A long flourish*

Draw near,

And list what with our council we have done
For that our kingdom's earth should not be soil'd
With that dear blood which it hath fostered,
And for our eyes do hate the dire aspect
Of civil wounds plough'd up with neighbours' sword,
And for we think the eagle-winged pride
Of sky-aspiring and ambitious thoughts, 130
With rival-hating envy, set on you

To wake our peace, which in our country's cradle
Draws the sweet infant breath of gentle sleep,
Which so roused up with boisterous untuned drums,
With harsh-resounding trumpets' dreadful bray,
And grating shock of wrathful iron arms,
Might from our quiet confines fright fair peace
And make us wade even in our kindred's blood,
Therefore, we banish you our territories

You, cousin Hereford, upon pain of life, 140
Till twice five summers have enrich'd our fields
Shall not regret our fair dominions,
But tread the stranger paths of banishment

That sun that warms you here shall shine on me ,
And those his golden beams to you here lent
Shall point on me and gild my banishment

K Rich Norfolk, for thee remains a heavier doom,
Which I with some unwillingness pronounce
The sly slow hours shall not determinate 150
The dateless limit of thy dear exile ,
The hopeless word of 'never to return'
Breathe I against thee, upon pain of life

Mow A heavy sentence, my most sovereign liege,
And all unlook'd for from your highness' mouth
A dearer merit, not so deep a maim
As to be cast forth in the common an,
Have I deserved at your highness' hands
The language I have learn'd these forty years,
My native English, now I must forgo 160
And now my tongue's use is to me no more
Than an unstrung viol or a harp,
Or like a cunning instrument cased up,
Or, being open, put into his hands
That knows no touch to tune the harmony
Within my mouth you have engal'd my tongue,
Doubly portcullis'd with my teeth and lips ,
And dull unfeeling barren ignorance
Is made my gaoler to attend on me
I am too old to fawn upon a nurse, 170
Too far in years to be a pupil now
What is thy sentence then but speechless death,
Which robs my tongue from breathing native breath ?

K Rich It boots thee not to be compassionate
After our sentence plaining comes too late

Mow Then thus I turn me from my country's light,
To dwell in solemn shades of endless night

K Rich Return again, and take an oath with thee

Our part therein we banish with yourselves—
To keep the oath that we administer
You never shall, so help you truth and God !
Embrace each other's love in banishment ,
Nor never look upon each other's face ,
Nor never write, regreet, nor reconcile
This loursing tempest of your home-bred hate ,
Nor never by advised purpose meet
To plot, contrive, or complot any ill
'Gainst us, our state, our subjects, or our land 190

Boling I swear

Mow And I, to keep all this

Boling Norfolk, so far as to mine enemy —
By this time, had the king permitted us,
One of our souls had wander'd in the air,
Banish'd this frail sepulchre of our flesh,
As now our flesh is banish'd from this land
Confess thy treasons ere thou fly the realm ,
Since thou hast far to go, bear not along
The clogging burthen of a guilty soul 200

Mow No, Bolingbroke if ever I were traitor,
My name be blotted from the book of life,
And I from heaven banish'd as from hence !
But what thou art, God, thou, and I do know ,
And all too soon, I fear, the king shall rue
Farewell, my liege Now no way can I stray ,
Save back to England, all the world's my way [Exit

K Rich Uncle, even in the glasses of thine eyes
I see thy grieved heart thy sad aspect
Hath from the number of his banish'd years 210
Pluck'd four away [To *Boling*] Six frozen winters spent,
Return with welcome home from banishment

Boling How long a time lies in one little word !
Four lagging winters and four wanton springs
End in a word such is the breath of kings

He shortens four years of my son's exile
But little vantage shall I reap thereby ,
For, ere the six years that he hath to spend
Can change their moons and bring their times about, 220
My oil dried lamp and time-bewasted light
Shall be extinct with age and endless night ,
My inch of taper will be burnt and done,
And blindfold death not let me see my son

K Rich Why, uncle, thou hast many years to live

Gaunt But not a minute, king, that thou canst give
Shorten my days thou canst with sullen sorrow,
And pluck nights from me, but not lend a morrow ,
Thou canst help time to furrow me with age,
But stop no wrinkle in his pilgrimage , 230
Thy word is current with him for my death,
But dead, thy kingdom cannot buy my breath

K Rich Thy son is banish'd upon good advice,
Whereto thy tongue a party-verdict gave
Why at our justice seem'st thou then to lour ?

Gaunt Things sweet to taste prove in digestion sour
You urged me as a judge , but I had rather
You would have bid me argue like a father
O, had it been a stranger, not my child,
To smooth his fault I should have been more mild 240
A partial slander sought I to avoid,
And in the sentence my own life destroy'd
Alas, I look'd when some of you should say,
I was too strict to make mine own away ,
But you gave leave to my unwilling tongue
Against my will to do myself this wrong

K Rich Cousin, farewell , and, uncle, bid him so
Six years we banish him, and he shall go

[*Flourish* *Exeunt King Richard and Train*

Aun Cousin, farewell what presence must not know,

As far as land will let me, by your side

Gaunt O, to what purpose dost thou hoard thy words,
That thou return'st no greeting to thy friends?

Boling I have too few to take my leave of you,
When the tongue's office should be prodigal
To breathe the abundant dolour of the heart

Gaunt Thy grief is but thy absence for a time

Boling Joy absent, grief is present for that time

Gaunt What is six winters? they are quickly gone 260

Boling To men in joy, but grief makes one hour ten

Gaunt Call it a travel that thou tak'st for pleasure

Boling My heart will sigh when I miscall it so,
Which finds it an enforced pilgrimage

Gaunt The sullen passage of thy weary steps
Esteem as foil wherein thou art to set
The precious jewel of thy home return

Boling Nay, rather, every tedious stride I make
Will but remember me what a deal of world
I wander from the jewels that I love 270

Must I not serve a long apprenticeship
To foreign passages, and in the end,
Having my freedom, boast of nothing else
But that I was a journeyman to grief?

Gaunt All places that the eye of heaven visits
Are to a wise man ports and happy havens
Teach thy necessity to reason thus,

There is no virtue like necessity

Think not the king did banish thee,

But thou the king Woe doth the heavier sit, 280

Where it perceives it is but faintly borne

Go, say I sent thee forth to purchase honour

And not the king exiled thee, or suppose

Devouring pestilence hangs in our air

And thou art flying to a fresher clime

Think what thy soul holds dear, imagine it

Suppose the singing birds musicians,
The grass whereon thou tread'st the presence strew'd,
The flowers fair ladies, and thy steps no more 290
Than a delightful measure or a dance,
For gnarling sorrow hath less power to bite
The man that mocks at it and sets it light

Boling O, who can hold a fire in his hand
By thinking on the frosty Caucasus ?
Or cloy the hungry edge of appetite
By bare imagination of a feast ?
Or wallow naked in December snow
By thinking on fantastic summer's heat ?
O, no ! the apprehension of the good 300
Gives but the greater feeling to the worse
Fell sorrow's tooth doth never rankle more
Than when he bites, but lanceth not the sore

Gaunt Come, come, my son, I'll bring thee on thy way
Had I thy youth and cause, I would not stay

Boling Then, England's ground, farewell, sweet soil,
adieu,
My mother, and my nurse, that bears me yet !
Where'er I wander, boast of this I can,
Though banish'd, yet a trueborn Englishman [Exeunt

SCENE IV *The court*

*Enter the KING, with BAGOT and GREEN at one door, and
the DUKE OF AUMERLE at another*

K Rich We did observe Cousin Aumerle,
How far brought you high Hereford on his way ?

Aum I brought high Hereford, if you call him so,
But to the next highway, and there I left him

K Rich And say, what store of parting tears were shed ?

Awaked the sleeping rheum, and so by chance
Did grace our hollow parting with a tear

K Rich What said our cousin when you parted with
him ? 10

Aum 'Farewell '

And, for my heart disdained that my tongue
Should so profane the word, that taught me craft
To counterfeit oppression of such grief
That words seem'd buried in my sorrow's grave
Marry, would the word 'farewell' have lengthened hours
And added years to his short banishment,
He should have had a volume of farewells ,
But since it would not, he had none of me

K Rich He is our cousin, cousin , but 'tis doubt, 20
When time shall call him home from banishment,
Whether our kinsman come to see his friends
Ourself and Bushy, Bagot here and Green
Observed his courtship to the common people ,
How he did seem to dive into their hearts
With humble and familiar courtesy,
What reverence he did throw away on slaves
 wooing poor craftsmen with the craft of smiles
And patient underbearing of his fortune,
As 'twere to banish their affects with him 30
Off goes his bonnet to an oyster-wench ,
A brace of draymen bid God speed him well
And had the tribute of his supple knee,
With 'Thanks, my countrymen, my loving friends ,'
As were our England in reversion his,
And he our subjects' next degree in hope

Green Well, he is gone , and with him go these thoughts
Now for the rebels which stand out in Ireland,
Expedient manage must be made, my liege,
Ere further leisure yield them further means 40
For their advantage and your highness' loss

And, for our coffers, with too great a court
And liberal largess, are grown somewhat light,
We are inforced to farm our royal realm ,
The revenue whereof shall furnish us
For our affairs in hand if that come short,
Our substitutes at home shall have blank charters ,
Whereto when they shall know what men are rich,
They shall subscribe them for large sums of gold 50
And send them after to supply our wants ,
For we will make for Ireland presently

Enter BUSHY

Bushy, what news ?

Bushy Old John of Gaunt is grievous sick, my lord,
Suddenly taken , and hath sent post haste
To entreat your majesty to visit him

K. Rich Where lies he ?

Bushy At Ely House

K. Rich Now put it, God, in the physician's mind
To help him to his grave immediately ! 60
The lining of his coffers shall make coats
To deck our soldiers for these Irish wars
Come, gentlemen, let's all go visit him
Pray God we may make haste, and come too late !

All Amen

[Exeunt]

ACT II

SCENE I *Ely House*

Enter JOHN OF GAUNT sick, with the DUKE OF YORK, etc

Gaunt Will the king come, that I may breathe my last
In wholesome counsel to his unsta'd youth ?

York Vex not yourself, nor strive not with your breath

Gaunt O, but they say the tongues of dying men
Enforce attention like deep harmony
Where words are scarce, they are seldom spent in vain,
For they breathe truth that breathe their words in pain
He that no more must say is listen'd more

Than they whom youth and ease have taught to glose 10
More are men's ends mark'd than their lives before

The setting sun, and music at the close,
As the last taste of sweets, is sweetest last,
Writ in remembrance more than things long past
Though Richard my life's counsel would not hear,
My death's sad tale may yet undeaf his ear

York No, it is stopped with other flattering sounds
As praises of his state, then, there are found
Lascivious metres, to whose venom sound
The open ear of youth doth always listen, 20
Report of fashions in proud Italy,
Whose manners still our tardy apish nation
Lamps after in base imitation
Where doth the world thrust forth a vanity—
So it be new, there's no respect how vile—
That is not quickly buzz'd into his ears?
Then all too late comes counsel to be heard,
Where will doth mutiny with wit's regard
Direct not him whose way himself will choose

'Tis breath thou lack'st, and that breath wilt thou lose 30

Gaunt Methinks I am a prophet new inspired
And thus expiring do foretell of him
His rash fierce blaze of riot cannot last,
For violent fires soon burn out themselves,
Small showers last long, but sudden storms are short;
He tires betimes that spurs too fast betimes,
With eager feeding food doth choke the feeder
Light vanity, insatiate cormorant,
Consuming means, soon prays upon itself

This earth of Majesty, this seat of Mars,
 This other Eden, demi-paradise,
 This fortress built by Nature for herself
 Against infection and the hand of war,
 This happy breed of men, this little world,
 This precious stone set in the silver sea,
 Which serves it in the office of a wall,
 Or as a moat defensive to a house,
 Against the envy of less happier lands,
 This blessed plot, this earth, this realm, this England, 50
 This nurse, this teeming womb of royal kings,
 Fear'd by their breed and famous by their birth,
 Renowned for their deeds as far from home,
 For Christian service and true chivalry,
 As is the sepulchre in stubborn Jewry
 Of the world's ransom, blessed Mary's son,
 This land of such dear souls, this dear dear land,
 Dear for her reputation through the world,
 Is now leased out, I die pronouncing it,
 Like to a tenement or pelting farm 60
 England, bound in with the triumphant sea,
 Whose rocky shore beats back the envious siege
 Of watery Neptune, is now bound in with shame,
 With mky blots and rotten parchment bonds
 That England, that was wont to conquer others,
 Hath made a shameful conquest of itself
 Ah, would the scandal vanish with my life,
 How happy then were my ensuing death !

*Enter KING RICHARD and QUEEN, AUMERLE, BUSHY, GREEN,
 BAGOT, ROSS, and WILLOUGHBY*

York The king is come deal mildly with his youth,
 For young hot colts being rag'd do' rage the more 70

Queen How fares our noble uncle, Lancaster ?

K Rich What comfort man ? how is't with aged Gaunt ?

Old Gaunt indeed, and gaunt in being old
Within me grief hath kept a tedious fast ,
And who abstains from meat that is not gaunt ?
For sleeping England long time have I watch'd ,
Watching breeds leanness, leanness is all gaunt
The pleasure that some fathers feed upon,
Is my strict fast , I mean, my children's looks , 80
And therein fasting, hast thou made me gaunt
Gaunt am I for the grave, gaunt as a grave,
Whose hollow womb inherits nought but bones

K Rich Can sick men play so nicely with their names ?

Gaunt No, misery makes sport to mock itself
Since thou dost seek to kill my name in me,
I mock my name, great king, to flatter thee

K Rich Should dying men flatter with those that live ?

Gaunt No, no, men living flatter those that die

K Rich Thou, now a-dying, say'st thou flatterest me 90

Gaunt O, no ! thou diest, though I the sicker be

K Rich I am in health, I breathe, and see thee ill

Gaunt Now He that made me knows I see thee ill ,
Ill in myself to see, and in thee seeing ill
Thy death-bed is no lesser than thy land
Wherein thou liest in reputation sick ,
And thou, too careless patient as thou art,
Commit'st thy anointed body to the cure
Of those physicians that first wounded thee
A thousand flatterers sit within thy crown,
Whose compass is no bigger than thy head ,
And yet, incaged in so small a verge,
The waste is no whit lesser than thy land
O, had thy grandsire with a prophet's eye
Seen how his son's son should destroy his sons,
From forth thy reach he would have laid thy shroud,
Deposing thee before thou wert possess'd,
Which art possess'd now to depose thyself

It were a shame to let this land by lease , 110
But for thy world enjoying but this land,
Is it not more than shame to shame it so ?
Landlord of England art thou now, not king
Thy state of law is bonds slave to the law ,
And thou—

K. Rich A lunatic lean-witted fool,
Presuming on an ague's privilege,
Darest with thy frozen admonition
Make pale our cheek, chasing the royal blood
With fury from his native residence
Now, by my seat's right royal majesty, 120
Wert thou not brother to great Edward's son,
This tongue that runs so roundly in thy head
Should run thy head from thy unreverent shoulders

Gaunt O, spare me not, my brother Edward's son,
For that I was his father Edward's son
That blood already, like the pelican,
Hast thou tapp'd out and drunkenly caroused
My brother Gloucester, plain well-meaning soul,
Whom fair befal in heaven 'mongst happy souls !
May be a precedent and witness good 130
That thou respect'st not spilling Edward's blood
Join with the present sickness that I have ,
And thy unkindness be like crooked age,
To crop at once a too-long wither'd flower
Live in thy shame, but die not shame with thee !
These words hereafter thy tormentors be !
Convey me to my bed, then to my grave
Love they to live that love and honour have

[*Exit, borne off by his Attendants*]

K. Rich And let them die that age and sullens have ,
For both hast thou, and both become the grave 140
York I do beseech your majesty, impute his words

As Harry Duke of Hereford, were he here

K Rich Right, you say true as Hereford's love, so his ,
As theirs, so mine , and all be as it is

Enter NORTHUMBERLAND

North My liege, old Gaunt commends him to your majesty

K Rich What says he ?

North Nay, nothing , all is said
His tongue is now a stringless instrument ,
Words, life and all, old Lancaster hath spent 150

York Be York the next that must be bankrupt so !
Though death be poor, it ends a mortal woe

K Rich The ripest fruit first falls, and so doth he ,
His time is spent, our pilgrimage must be
So much for that Now for our Irish wars
We must supplant those rough rug-headed kerns,
Which live like venom where no venom else
But only they have privilege to live
And for these great affairs do ask some charge,
Towards our assistance we do seize to us 160
The plate, coin, revenues and moveables,
Whereof our uncle Gaunt did stand possess'd

York How long shall I be patient ? ah, how long
Shall tender duty make me suffer wrong ?
Not Gloucester's death, nor Hereford's banishment,
Not Gaunt's rebukes, nor England's private wrongs,
Nor the prevention of poor Bolingbroke
About his marriage, nor my own disgrace,
Have ever made me sour my patient cheek,
Or bend one wrinkle on my sovereign's face 170
I am the last of noble Edward's sons,
Of whom thy father, Prince of Wales, was first
In war was never lion raged more fierce,
In peace was never gentle lamb more mild,
Then was that young and princely gentleman

Accomplish'd with the number of thy hours ,
 But when he frown'd, it was against the French
 And not against his friends , his noble hand
 Did win what he did spend and spent not that 180
 Which his triumphant father's hand had won ,
 His hands were guilty of no kindred blood,
 But bloody with the enemies of his kin
 O Richard ! York is too far gone with grief,
 Or else he never would compare between

K. Rich Why, uncle, what's the matter ?

York

O my liege,

Pardon me, if you please , if not, I, pleased
 Not to be pardon'd, am content withal
 Seek you to seize and gripe into your hands
 The royalties and rights of banish'd Hereford ? 190
 Is not Gaunt dead, and doth not Hereford live ?
 Was not Gaunt just, and is not Harry true ?
 Did not the one deserve to have an heir ?
 Is not his heir a well-deserving son ?
 Take Hereford's rights away, and take from Time
 His charters and his customary rights ,
 Let not to-morrow then ensue to-day ,
 Be not thyself , for how art thou a king
 But by fair sequence and succession ?
 Now, afore God—God forbid I say true !— 200
 If you do wrongfully seize Hereford's rights,
 Call in the letters-patents that he hath
 By his attorneys-general to sue
 His livery, and deny his offer'd homage,
 You pluck a thousand dangers on your head,
 You lose a thousand well-disposed hearts
 And prick my tender patience to those thoughts
 Which honour and allegiance cannot think

K. Rich Think what you will, we seize into our hands

What will ensue hereof, there's none can tell,
But by bad courses may be understood
That their events can never fall out good [Exit

K. Rich. Go, Bushy, to the Earl of Wiltshire straight
Bid him repair to us to Ely House
To see this business To-morrow next
We will for Ireland, and 'tis time, I trow
And we create, in absence of ourself,
Our uncle York lord governor of England, 220
For he is just and always loved us well
Come on, our queen to-morrow must we part,
Be merry, for our time of stay is short

[Flourish Exeunt King, Queen, Aumerle, Bushy,
Green, and Bagot

North. Well, lords, the Duke of Lancaster is dead

Ross. And living too, for now his son is duke

Will. Barely in title, not in revenue

North. Richly in both, if justice had her right

Ross. My heart is great, but it must break with silence,
Ere't be disburden'd with a liberal tongue

North. Nay, speak thy mind, and let him ne'er speak
more 230

That speaks thy words again to do thee harm!

Will. Tends that thou wouldst speak to the Duke of
Hereford?

If it be so, out with it boldly, man,

Quick is mine ear to hear of good towards him

Ross. No good at all that I can do for him,
Unless you call it good to pity him,
Bereft and gelded of his patrimony

North. Now, afore God, 'tis shame such wrongs are borne
In him, a royal prince, and many more
Of noble blood in this declining land 240
The king is not himself, but basely led

That will the king severely prosecute
'Gainst us, our lives, our children, and our heirs

Ross The commons hath he pill'd with grievous taxes,
And lost their hearts the nobles hath he fined
For ancient quarrels, and quite lost their hearts

Will And daily new exactions are devised,
As blanks, benevolences, and I wot not what 250
But what, o God's name, doth become of this?

North Wars have not wasted it, for warr'd he hath
not,

But basely yielded upon compromise
That which his noble ancestors achieved with blows
More hath he spent in peace than they in wars

Ross The Earl of Wiltshire hath the realm in farm

Will The king's grown bankrupt, like a broken man

North Reproach and dissolution hangeth over him

Ross He hath not money for these Irish wars,
His burthenous taxations notwithstanding, 260
But by the robbing of the banish'd duke

North His noble kinsman most degenerate king!
But, lords, we hear this fearful tempest sing,
Yet seek no shelter to avoid the storm,
We see the wind sit sore upon our sails,
And yet we strike not, but securely perish

Ross We see the very wreck that we must suffer,
And unavoided is the danger now,
For suffering so the causes of our wreck

North Not so, even through the hollow eyes of death 270
I spy life peering, but I dare not say
How near the tidings of our comfort is

Will Nay, let us share thy thoughts, as thou dost ours

Ross Be confident to speak, Northumberland
We three are but thyself, and, speaking so,
Thy words are but as thoughts, therefore, be bold

That Harry Duke of Hereford, Rainold Lord Cobham,

280

That late broke from the Duke of Exeter,
His brother, Archbishop late of Canterbury,
Sir Thomas Erpmingham, Sir John Ramston,
Sir John Norbery, Sir Robert Waterton and Francis Quont,
All these well furnish'd by the Duke of Bretagne
With eight tall ships, three thousand men of war,
Are making hither with all due expedience
And shortly mean to touch our northern shore
Perhaps they had ere this, but that they stay
The first departing of the king for Ireland 290
If then we shall shake off our slavish yoke,
Imp out our drooping country's broken wing,
Redeem from broking pawn the blemish'd crown,
Wipe off the dust that hides our sceptre's gilt
And make high majesty look like itself,
Away with me in post to Ravenspurgh,
But if you faint, as fearing to do so,
Stay and be secret, and myself will go

Ross To horse, to horse ! urge doubts to them that fear

Willò Hold out my horse, and I will first be there 300

[*Exeunt*

SCENE II *Windsor Castle*

Enter QUEEN, BUSHY, and BAGOT

Bushy Madam, your majesty is too much sad
You promised, when you parted with the king,
To lay aside life-harming heaviness
And entertain a cheerful disposition

Queen To please the king I did, to please myself
I cannot do it, yet I know no cause
Why I should welcome such a guest as grief,

Some unborn sorrow, ripe in fortune's womb 10
Is coming towards me, and my inward soul
With nothing trembles at some thing it grieves,
More than with parting from my lord the king

Bushy Each substance of a grief hath twenty shadows,
Which shows like grief itself, but is not so ,
For sorrow's eye, glazed with blinding tears,
Divides one thing entire to many objects ,
Like perspectives, which rightly gazed upon
Show nothing but confusion, eyed awry
Distinguish form so your sweet majesty 20
Looking awry upon your lord's departure,
Find shapes of grief, more than himself, to wail ,
Which, look'd on as it is, is nought but shadows
Of what it is not Then, thrice-gracious queen,
More than your lord's departure weep not more's not
seen ,

Or if it be, 'tis with false sorrow's eye,
Which for things true weeps things imaginary

Queen It may be so , but yet my inward soul
Persuades me it is otherwise howe'er it be,
I cannot but be sad , so heavy sad 30
As,—though, in thinking, on no thought I think,—
Makes me with heavy nothing faint and shrink

Bushy 'Tis nothing but conceit, my gracious lady

Queen 'Tis nothing less conceit is still derived
From some forefather grief , mine is not so,
For nothing hath begot my something grief ,
Or something hath the nothing that I grieve
'Tis in reversion that I do possess ,
But what it is, that is not yet known , what
I cannot name , 'tis nameless woe, I wot 40

Enter GREEN

Queen Why hopest thou so? 'tis better hope he is,
For his designs crave haste, his haste good hope
Then wherefore dost thou hope he is not shipp'd?

Green That he, our hope, might have retuned his power,
And driven into despair an enemy's hope,
Who strongly hath set footing in this land
The banish'd Bolingbroke repeals himself,
And with uplifted arms is safe arrived 50
At Ravenspurgh

Queen Now God in heaven forbid!

Green Ah, madam, 'tis too true and that is worse,
The Lord Northumberland, his son young Henry Percy,
The Lords of Ross, Beaumont, and Willoughby,
With all their powerful friends, are fled to him

Bushy Why have you not proclaim'd Northumberland
And all the rest revolted faction traitors?

Green We have whereupon the Earl of Worcester
Hath broke his staff, resign'd his stewardship,
And all the household servants fled with him 60
To Bolingbroke

Queen So, Green, thou art the midwife to my woe,
And Bolingbroke my sorrow's dismal hen
Now hath my soul brought forth her prodigy,
And I, a gasping new-deliver'd mother,
Have woe to woe, sorrow to sorrow join'd

Bushy Despair not, madam

Queen Who shall hinder me?
I will despair, and be at enmity
With cozening hope he is a flatterer,
A parasite, a keeper back of death, 70
Who gently would dissolve the bands of life,
Which false hope lingers in extremity

Enter YORK

O, full of careful business are his looks !

Uncle, for God's sake, speak comfortable words

York Should I do so, I should belie my thoughts

Comfort's in heaven , and we are on the earth,

Where nothing lives but crosses, cares and grief

Your husband, he is gone to save far off,

80

Whilst others come to make him lose at home

Here am I left to underprop his land,

Who, weak with age, cannot support myself

Now comes the sick hour that his surfeit made ,

Now shall he try his friends that flatter'd him

Enter a Servant

Serv My lord, your son was gone before I came

York He was ? Why, so ' go all which way it will !

The nobles they are fled, the commons they are cold,

And will, I fear, revolt on Hereford's side

Sirrah, get thee to Plashy, to my sister Gloucester ,

90

Bid her send me presently a thousand pound

Hold, take my ring

Serv My lord, I had forgot to tell your lordship,

To day, as I came by, I called there ,

But I shall grieve you to report the rest

York What is't, knave ?

Serv An hour before I came, the duchess died

York God for his mercy ! what a tide of woes

Comes rushing on this woeful land at once !

I know not what to do I would to God,

100

So my untruth had not provoked him to it,

The king had cut off my head with my brother's

What, are there no posts despatch'd for Ireland ?

How shall we do for money for these wars ?

Come, sister,—cousin, I would say,—pray, pardon me

Go, fellow, get thee home, provide some carts

If I know how or which way to order these affairs
Thus thrust disorderly into my hands, 110
Never believe me Both are my kinsmen
The one is my sovereign, whom both my oath
And duty bids defend, the other again
Is my kinsman, whom the king hath wrong'd,
Whom conscience and my kindred bids to right
Well, somewhat we must do Come, cousin, I'll
Dispose of you
Gentlemen, go, muster up your men,
And meet me presently at Berkeley
I should to Plashy too, 120
But time will not permit all is uneven,
And everything is left at six and seven

[*Exeunt York and Queen*]

Bushy The wind sits fair for news to go to Ireland,
But none returns For us to levy power
Proportionable to the enemy
Is all impossible

Green Besides, our nearness to the king in love
Is near the hate of those love not the king

Bagot And that's the wavering commons for their love
Lies in their purses, and whoso empties them 130
By so much fills their hearts with deadly hate

Bushy Wherein the king stands generally condemn'd

Bagot If judgement lie in them, then so do we,
Because we ever have been near the king

Green Well, I will for refuge straight to Bristol castle
The Earl of Wiltshire is already there

Bushy Thither will I with you, for little office
The hateful commons will perform for us,
Except like curs to tear us all to pieces
Will you go along with us? 140

Bagot No, I will to Ireland to his majesty
Farewell if heart's presages be not vain,

Bushy That's as York thrives to beat back Bolingbroke
Green Alas, poor duke ! the task he undertakes
 Is numbering sands and drinking oceans dry
 Where one on his side fights, thousands will fly
 Farewell at once, for once, for all, and ever

Bushy Well, we may meet again

Bagot

I fear me, never

[*Exeunt*

SCENE III *Wilds in Gloucestershire*

Enter BOLINGBROKE and NORTHUMBERLAND, with Forces

Boling How far is it, my Lord, to Berkeley now ?

North Believe me, noble lord,

I am a stranger here in Gloucestershire
 These high wild hills and rough uneven ways
 Draws out our miles, and makes them wearisome ,
 And yet your fair discourse hath been as sugar,
 Making the hard way sweet and delectable
 But I bethink me what a weary way
 From Ravenspurgh to Cotswold will be found
 In Ross and Willoughby, wanting you company, 10
 Which, I protest, hath very much beguiled
 The tediousness and process of my travel
 But theirs is sweetened with the hope to have
 The present benefit which I possess ,
 And hope to joy is little less in joy
 Than hope enjoy'd by this the weary lords
 Shall make their way seem short, as mine hath done
 By sight of what I have, your noble company
Boling Of much less value is my company
 Than your good words But who comes here ? 20

Enter HENRY PERCY

North It is my son young Harry Percy

Harry, how fares your uncle ?

Percy I had thought, my lord, to have learn'd his health
of you

North Why, is he not with the queen ?

Percy No, my good Lord , he hath forsook the court,
Broken his staff of office and dispersed
The household of the king

North What was his reason ?

He was not so resolved when last we spake together

Percy Because your lordship was proclaimed traitor 30
But he, my lord, is gone to Ravenspurgh,
To offer service to the Duke of Hereford,
And sent me over by Berkeley, to discover
What power the Duke of York had levied there ,
Then with directions to repair to Ravenspurgh

North Have you forgot the Duke of Hereford, boy ?

Percy No, my good lord, for that is not forgot
Which ne'er I did remember to my knowledge,
I never in my life did look on him

North Then learn to know him now , this is the duke 40

Percy My gracious lord, I tender you my service,
Such as it is, being tender, raw and young ,
Which elder days shall ripen and confirm
To more approved service and desert

Boling I thank thee, gentle Percy , and be sure
I count myself in nothing else so happy
As in a soul remembering my good friends ,
And, as my fortune ripens with thy love,
It shall be still thy true love's recompense
My heart this covenant makes, my hand thus seals it 50

North How far is it to Berkeley ? and what stir
Keeps good old York there with his men of war ?

Percy There stands the castle, by yon tuft of trees,
Mann'd with three hundred men, as I have heard ,

Enter ROSS and WILLOUGHBY

North Here come the Lords of Ross and Willoughby,
Bloody with spurring, fiery-red with haste

Boling Welcome, my lords I wot your love pursues
A banish'd traitor all my treasury 60
Is yet but unfelt thanks, which more enrich'd
Shall be your love and labour's recompense

Ross Your presence makes us rich, most noble lord

Will And far surmounts our labour to attain it

Boling Evermore thanks, the exchequer of the poor,
Which, till my infant fortune comes to years,
Stands for my bounty But who comes here?

Enter BERKELEY

North It is my Lord of Berkeley, as I guess

Berk My Lord of Hereford, my message is to you

Boling My lord, my answer is—to Lancaster, 70
And I am come to seek that name in England,
And I must find that title in your tongue,
Before I make reply to aught you say

Berk Mistake me not, my lord, 'tis not my meaning
To raze one title of your honour out
To you, my lord, I come, what lord you will,
From the most gracious regent of this land,
The Duke of York, to know what pricks you on
To take advantage of the absent time,
And fright our native peace with self-born arms 80

Enter YORK attended

Boling I shall not need transport my words by you,
Here comes his grace in person

My noble uncle! [*A kneels*]

York Show me thy humble heart, and not thy knee,

York Tut, tut !

Grace me no grace, nor uncle me no uncle
I am no traitor's uncle , and that word 'grace'
In an ungracious mouth is but profane
Why have those banish'd and forbidden legs 90
Dared once to touch a dust of England's ground ?
But then more 'why ? why have they dared to march
So many miles upon her peaceful bosom,
Frighting her pale-faced villages with war
And ostentation of despised arms ?
Comest thou because the anointed king is hence ?
Why, foolish boy, the king is left behind,
And in my loyal bosom lies his power
Were I but now the lord of such hot youth
As when brave Gaunt, thy father, and myself 100
Rescued the Black Prince, that young Mars of men,
From forth the ranks of many thousand French,
O, then how quickly should this arm of mine,
Now prisoner to the palsy, chastise thee
And minister correction to thy fault !

Boling My gracious uncle, let me know my fault
On what condition stands it and wherem ?

York Even in condition of the worst degree,
In gross rebellion and detested treason
Thou art a banish'd man, and here art come 110
Before the expiration of thy time,
In braving arms against thy sovereign

Boling As I was banish'd, I was banish'd Hereford ,
But as I come, I come for Lancaster
And, noble uncle, I beseech your grace
Look on my wrongs with an indifferent eye
You are my father, for methinks in you
I see old Gaunt alive , O, then, my father,
Will you permit that I shall stand condemn'd

To upstart unthrifths? Wherefore was I born?
If that my cousin king be King of England,
It must be granted I am Duke of Lancaster
You have a son, Aumerle, my noble cousin,
Had you first died, and he been thus trod down,
He should have found his uncle Gaunt a father
To rouse his wrongs and chase them to the bay
I am denied to sue my livery here,
And yet my letters-patents give me leave 130
My father's goods are all distrain'd and sold,
And these and all are all amiss employ'd
What would you have me do? I am a subject,
And I challenge law attorneys are denied me,
And therefore personally I lay my claim
To my inheritance of free descent

North The noble duke hath been too much abused

Ross It stands your grace upon to do him right

Willu Base men by his endowments are made great

York My lords of England, let me tell you this 140

I have had feeling of my cousin's wrongs
And laboured all I could to do him right,
But in this kind to come, in braving arms,
Be his own carver and cut out his way,
To find out right with wrong, it may not be,
And you that do abet him in this kind
Cherish rebellion and are rebels all

North The noble duke hath sworn his coming is
But for his own, and for the right of that
We all have strongly sworn to give him aid, 150
And let him ne'er see joy that breaks that oath!

York Well, well, I see the issue of these arms
I cannot mend it, I must needs confess,
Because my power is weak and all ill left
But if I could, by Him that gave me life,

But since I cannot, be it known to you
I do remain as neuter So, fare you well ,
Unless you please to enter in the castle 160
And there repose you for this night

Boling An offer, uncle, that we will accept
But we must win your grace to go with us
To Bristol castle, which they say is held
By Bushy, Bagot and their complices,
The caterpillars of the commonwealth,
Which I have sworn to weed and pluck away

Fork It may be I will go with you but yet I'll pause ,
For I am loath to break our country's laws
Nor friends nor foes, to me welcome you are 170
Things past redress are now with me past care [*Exeunt*

SCENE IV *A camp in Wales*

Enter SALISBURY and a Welsh Captain

Cap My Lord of Salisbury, we have stay'd ten days,
And hardly kept our countrymen together,
And yet we hear no tidings from the king ,
Therefore we will disperse ourselves farewell

Sal Stay yet another day, thou trusty Welshman
The king reposeth all his confidence in thee

Cap 'Tis thought the king is dead , we will not stay
The bay-trees in our country are all wither'd
And meteors fright the fixed stars of heaven ,
The pale-face moon looks bloody on the earth 180
And lean-look'd prophets whisper fearful change ,
Rich men look sad and ruffians dance and leap,
The one in fear to lose what they enjoy,
The other to enjoy by rage and war
These signs forerun the death or fall of kings

Sal Ah, Richard, with the eyes of heavy mind
 I see thy glory like a shooting star
 Fall to the base earth from the firmament 20
 Thy sun sets weeping in the lowly west,
 Witnessing storms to come, woe and unrest
 Thy friends are fled to wait upon thy foes,
 And crossly to thy good all fortune goes [*Exit*

ACT III

SCENE I *Bristol Before the castle*

*Enter BOLINGBROKE, YORK, NORTHUMBERLAND, ROSS, PERCY,
 WILLOUGHBY, with BUSHY and GREEN, prisoners*

Boling Bring forth these men
 Bushy and Green, I will not vex your souls—
 Since presently your souls must part your bodies—
 With too much urging your pernicious lives,
 For 'twere no charity, yet, to wash your blood
 From off my hands, here in the view of men
 I will unfold some causes of your deaths
 You have misled a prince, a royal king,
 A happy gentleman in blood and lineaments,
 By you unhappied and disfigured clean 10
 You have in manner with your sinful hours
 Made a divorce betwixt his queen and him,
 Broke the possession of a royal bed
 And stain'd the beauty of a fair queen's cheeks
 With tears drawn from her eyes by your foul wrongs
 Myself, a prince by fortune of my birth,
 Near to the king in blood, and near in love
 Till you did make him misinterpret me,
 Have stoop'd my neck under your injuries,

Whilst you have fed upon my signories,
Dispark'd my parks and fell'd my forest woods,
From my own windows torn my household coat,
Razed out my imprese, leaving me no sign,
Save men's opinions and my living blood,
To show the world I ~~am~~ a gentleman
This and much more, much more than twice all this,
Condemns you to the death See them deliver'd over
To execution and the hand of death

30

Bushy More welcome is the stroke of death to me
Than Bolingbroke to England Lords, farewell

Green My comfort is that heaven will take our souls
And plague injustice with the pains of hell

Boling My Lord Northumberland, see them dispatch'd

[*Exeunt Northumberland and others, with the
prisoners*]

Uncle, you say the queen is at your house ,
For God's sake, fairly let her be entreated
Tell her I send to her my kind commends ,
Take special care my greetings be deliver'd

York A gentleman of mine I have dispatch'd
With letters of your love to her at large

40

Boling Thanks, gentle uncle Come, lords, away,
To fight with Glendower and his complices
Awhile to work, and after holiday

[*Exeunt*]

SCENE II *The coast of Wales A castle in view*

*Drums flourish and colours Enter KING RICHARD, the
BISHOP OF CARLISLE, AUMERLE, and Soldiers*

K Rich Bailloughly castle call they this at hand ?

Aum Yea, my lord How brooks your grace the air,
After your late tossing on the breaking seas ?

Dear earth, I do salute thee with my hand,
Though rebels wound thee with their horses' hoofs
As a long-parted mother with her child
Plays fondly with her tears and smiles in meeting,
So, weeping, smiling, greet I thee, my earth, 10
And do thee favours with my royal hands
Feed not thy sovereign's foe, my gentle earth,
Nor with thy sweets comfort his ravenous sense,
But let thy spiders, that suck up thy venom,
And heavy gaited toads lie in their way,
Doing annoyance to the treacherous feet
Which with usurping steps do trample thee
Yield stinging nettles to mine enemies,
And when they from thy bosom pluck a flower,
Guard it, I pray thee, with a lurking adder 20
Whose double tongue may with a mortal touch
Throw death upon thy sovereign's enemies
Mock not my senseless conjuration, lords
This earth shall have a feeling and these stones
Prove armed soldiers, ere her native king
Shall falter under foul rebellion's arms

Car Fear not, my lord that Power that made you king
Hath power to keep you king in spite of all
The means that heaven yields must be embraced,
And not neglected, else, if heaven would, 30
And we will not, heaven's offer we refuse,
The proffer'd means of succour and redress

Aum He means, my lord, that we are too remiss,
Whilst Bolingbroke, through our security,
Grows strong and great in substance and in power

K Rich Discomfortable cousin! know'st thou not
That when the searching eye of heaven is hid,
Behind the globe, and lights the lower world,
Then thieves and robbers range abroad unseen

He fires the proud tops of the eastern pines
And darts his light through every guilty hole,
Then murders, treasons and detested sins,
The cloak of night being pluck'd from off their backs,
Stand bare and naked, trembling at themselves ?
So when this thief, this traitor, Bolingbroke,
Who all this while hath revell'd in the night
Whilst we were wandering with the antipodes,
Shall see us rising in our throne, the east, 50
His treasons will sit blushing in his face,
Not able to endure the sight of day,
But self-affrighted tremble at his sin
Not all the water in the rough rude sea
Can wash the balm off from an anointed king ,
The breath of worldly men cannot depose
The deputy elected by the Lord
For every man that Bolingbroke hath press'd
To lift shrewd steel against our golden crown,
God for his Richard hath in heavenly pay 60
A glorious angel then, if angels fight,
Weak men must fall, for heaven still guards the right

Enter SALISBURY

Welcome, my lord how far off lies your power ?
Sal Nor near nor farther off, my gracious lord,
Than this weak arm discomfort guides my tongue
And bids me speak of nothing but despair
One day too late, I fear me, noble lord,
Hath clouded all thy happy days on earth
O, call back yesterday, bid time return,
And thou shalt have twelve thousand fighting men ! 70
To-day, to-day, unhappy day, too late,
O'erthrows thy joys, friends, fortune and thy state
For all the Welshmen, hearing thou wert dead,

K Rich But now the blood of twenty thousand men
Did triumph in my face, and they are fled,
And, till so much blood thither come again,
Have I not reason to look pale and dead?
All souls that will be safe fly from my side, 80
For time hath set a blot upon my pride

Aum Comfort, my liege, remember who you are

K Rich I had forgot myself am I not king?
Awake, thou sluggard majesty! thou sleepest
Is not the king's name twenty thousand names?
Arm, arm, my name! a puny subject strikes
At thy great glory Look not to the ground,
Ye favourites of a king are we not high?
High be our thoughts I know my uncle York 89
Hath power enough to serve our turn But who comes here?

Enter SCROOP

Scroop More health and happiness betide my liege
Than can my care-tuned tongue deliver him!

K Rich Mine ear is open and my heart prepared
The worst is worldly loss thou canst unfold
Say, is my kingdom lost? why, 'twas my care,
And what loss is it to be rid of care?
Strives Bolingbroke to be as great as we?
Greater he shall not be, if he serve God,
We'll serve Him too and be his fellow so
Revolt our subjects? that we cannot mend, 100
They break their faith to God as well as us
Cry woe, destruction, ruin, loss, decay,
The worst is death, and death will have his day

Scroop Glad am I that your highness is so arm'd
To bear the tidings of calamity
Like an unseasonable stormy day,
Which makes the silver rivers drown their shores,
As if the world were all dissolved to tears,

Of Bolingbroke, covering your fearful land 110
With hard bright steel and hearts harder than steel
White-beards have arm'd their thin and hairless scalps
Against thy majesty, boys, with women's voices,
Strive to speak big and clap their female joints
In stiff unwieldy arms against thy crown
Thy very beadsmen learn to bend their bows
Of double-fatal yew against thy state,
Yea, distaff-women manage rusty bills
Against thy state both young and old rebel,
And all goes worse than I have power to tell 120

K Rich Too well, too well thou tell'st a tale so ill
Where is the Earl of Wiltshire? where is Bagot?
What has become of Bushy? where is Green?
That they have let the dangerous enemy
Measure our confines with such peaceful steps?
If we prevail, their heads shall pay for it
I warrant they have made peace with Bolingbroke

Scroop Peace have they made with him indeed, my lord

K Rich O villains, vipers, damn'd without redemption!
Dogs, easily won to fawn on any man! 130
Snakes, in my heart-blood warm'd, that sting my heart
Three Judases, each one thrice worse than Judas!
Would they make peace? terrible hell make war
Upon their spotted souls for this offence!

Scroop Sweet love, I see, changing his property,
Turns to the sourest and most deadly hate
Again uncure their souls, their peace is made
With heads, and not with hands those whom you curse
Have felt the worst of death's destroying wound
And lie full low, grav'd in the hollow ground 140

Aum Is Bushy, Green, and the Earl of Wiltshire dead?

Scroop Ay, all of them at Bristol lost their heads

Aum Where is the duke my father with his power?

K Rich No matter where, of comfort no man speak

Make dust our paper and with rainy eyes
Write sorrow on the bosom of the earth,
Let's choose executors and talk of wills
And yet not so, for what can we bequeath
Save our deposed bodies to the ground ? 150
Our lands, our lives and all are Bolingbroke's,
And nothing can we call our own but death
And that small model of the barren earth
Which serves as paste and cover to our bones
For God's sake, let us sit upon the ground
And tell sad stories of the death of kings
How some have been deposed , some slain in war ,
Some haunted by the ghosts they have deposed ,
Some poison'd by their wives , some sleeping kill'd ,
All murder'd for within the hollow crown 160
That rounds the mortal temples of a king
Keeps Death his court and there the antic sits,
Scoffing his state and grinning at his pomp,
Allowing him a breath, a little scene,
To monarchize, be fear'd and kill with looks,
Infusing him with self and vain conceit,
As if this flesh which walls about our life
Were brass impregnable, and humour'd thus
Comes at the last and with a little pin
Bores through his castle wall, and farewell king ! 170
Cover your heads and mock not flesh and blood
With solemn reverence throw away respect,
Tradition, form and ceremonious duty,
For you have but mistook me all this while
I live with bread like you, feel want,
Taste grief, need friends subjected thus,
How can you say to me, I am a king ?
Car My lord, wise men ne'er sit and wail their woes,
But presently prevent the ways to wail
To fear the foe, since fear oppresses strength, 180

And so your follies fight against yourself
Fear, and be slain, no worse can come to fight
And fight and die is death destroying death,
Where fearing dying pays death servile breath

Aum My father hath a power, inquire of him,
And learn to make a body of a limb

K Rich Thou chid'st me well proud Bolingbroke, I come
To change blows with thee for our day of doom
This ague fit of fear is over-blown, 190
An easy task it is to win our own

Say, Scroop, where lies our uncle with his power?
Speak sweetly, man, although thy looks be sour

Scroop Men judge by the complexion of the sky
The state and inclination of the day
So may you by my dull and heavy eye,

My tongue hath but a heavier tale to say
I play the torturer, by small and small
To lengthen out the worst that must be spoken
Your uncle York is join'd with Bolingbroke, 200
And all your northern castles yielded up,
And all your southern gentlemen in arms
Upon his party

K Rich Thou hast said enough
Beshrew thee, cousin, which didst lead me forth

[*To Aumerle*

Of that sweet way I was in to despair!
What say you now? what comfort have we now?
By heaven, I'll hate him everlastingly
That bids me be of comfort any more
Go to Flint castle there I'll pine away,
A king, woe's slave, shall kingly woe obey 210
That power I have, discharge, and let them go
To ear the land that hath some hope to grow,
For I have none let no man speak again
To alter this for counsel is but vain

K Rich He does me double wrong
That wounds me with the flatteries of his tongue
Discharge my followers let them hence away,
From Richard's night to Bolingbroke's fair day [Exeunt]

SCENE III *Wales Before Flint castle*

*Enter, with drum and colours, BOLINGBROKE, YORK, NORTH-
UMBERLAND, Attendants, and forces*

Boling So that by this intelligence we learn
The Welshmen are dispersed, and Salisbury
Is gone to meet the king, who lately landed
With some few private friends upon this coast

North The news is very fair and good, my lord
Richard not far from hence hath hid his head

York It would beseem the Lord Northumberland
To say 'King Richard' alack the heavy day
When such a sacred king should hide his head

North Your grace mistakes, only to be brief, 10
Left I his title out

York The time hath been,
Would you have been so brief with him, he would
Have been so brief with you, to shorten you,
For taking' so the head, your whole head's length

Boling Mistake not, uncle, further than you should

York Take not, good cousin, further than you should,
Lest you mistake the heavens are o'er our heads

Boling I know it, uncle, and oppose not myself
Against their will But who comes here?

Enter PERCY

Welcome, Harry what, will not this castle yield? 20

Percy The castle royally is mann'd, my lord,
Against thy entrance

Why, it contains no king ?

Percy Yes, my good lord,
It doth contain a king, King Richard lies
Within the limits of yon lime and stone
And with him are the Lord Aumerle, Lord Salisbury,
Sir Stephen Scroop, besides a clergy man
Of holy reverence, who, I cannot learn

North O, belike it is the Bishop of Carlisle 30

Boling Noble lords,
Go to the rude ribs of that most ancient castle,
Through brazen trumpet send the breath of parley
Into his ruin'd ears, and thus deliver
Henry Bolingbroke

On both his knees doth kiss King Richard's hand
And sends allegiance and true faith of heart
To his most royal person, hither come
Even at his feet to lay my arms and power,
Provided that my banishment repeal'd 40

And lands restored again be freely granted
If not, I'll use the advantage of my power
And lay the summer's dust with showers of blood
Rain'd from the wounds of slaughter'd Englishmen
The which, how far off from the mind of Bolingbroke
It is, such crimson tempest should bedrench
The fresh green lap of fair King Richard's land,
My stooping duty tenderly shall show
Go, signify as much, while here we march
Upon the grassy carpet of this plain 50

Let's march without the noise of threatening drum,
That from this castle's tatter'd battlements
Our fair appointments may be well perused
Methinks King Richard and myself should meet
With no less terror than the elements
Of fire and water, when their thundering shock

The rage be his, whilst on the earth I rain
My waters , on the earth, and not on him 60
March on, and mark King Richard how he looks

*Parle without, and answer within Then a flourish Enter on
the walls, KING RICHARD, the BISHOP OF CARLISLE,
AUMERLE, SCROOP, and SALISBURY*

See, see, King Richard doth himself appear,
As doth the blushing discontented sun
From out the fiery portal of the east,
When he perceives the envious clouds are bent
To dim his glory and to stain the track
Of his bright passage to the occident

York Yet looks he like a king behold his eye,
As bright as is the eagle's, lightens forth
Controlling majesty alack, alack, for woe, 70
That any harm should stain so fair a show !

K Rich We are amazed , and thus long have we stood
To watch the fearful bending of thy knee, [To North
Because we thought ourself thy lawful king
And if we be, how dare thy joints forget
To pay their awful duty to our presence ?
If we be not, show us the hand of God
That hath dismiss'd us from our stewardship ,
For well we know, no hand of blood and bone
Can gripe the sacred handle of our sceptre, 80
Unless he do profane, steal, or usurp
And though you think that all, as you have done,
Have torn their souls by turning them from us,
And we are barren and bereft of friends ,
Yet know, my master, God omnipotent,
Is mustering in his clouds on your behalf
Armies of pestilence , and they shall strike
Your children yet unborn and unbegot,

Tell Bolingbroke—for yond methinks he stands—
That every stride he makes upon my land
Is dangerous treason he is come to open
The purple testament of bleeding war,
But ere the crown he looks for live in peace,
Ten thousand bloody crowns of mothers' sons
Shall ill become the flower of England's face,
Change the complexion of her maid pale peace
To scarlet indignation, and bedew

Her pastures' grass with faithful English blood 100

North The king of heaven forbid our lord the king
Should so with civil and uncivil arms
Be rush'd upon ' Thy thrice noble cousin
Harry Bolingbroke doth humbly kiss thy hand,
And by the honourable tomb he swears,
That stands upon your royal grandsire's bones,
And by the royalties of both your bloods,
Currents that spring from one most gracious head,
And by the buried hand of warlike Gaunt,
And by the worth and honour of himself, 110
Comprising all that may be sworn or said,
His coming hither hath no further scope
Than for his lineal loyalties and to beg
Enfranchisement immediate on his knees
Which on thy royal party granted once,
His glittering arms he will commend to rust,
His barbed steeds to stables, and his heart
To faithful service of your majesty

This swears he, as he is a prince, is just,
And, as I am a gentleman, I credit him 120

K Rich Northumberland, say thus the king returns
His noble cousin is right welcome hither,
And all the number of his fair demands
Shall be accomplish'd without contradiction
With all the gracious utterance thou hast

We do debase ourselves, cousin, do we not, [*To Aumerle*
To look so poorly and to speak so fair ?
Shall we call back Northumberland, and send
Defiance to the traitor, and so die ? 130

Aum No, good my lord, let's fight with gentle words
Till time lend friends and friends their helpful swords

K Rich O God, O God ! that e'er this tongue of mine,
That laid the sentence of dread banishment
On yon proud man, should take it off again
With words of sooth ! O that I were as great
As is my grief, or lesser than my name !
Or that I could forget what I have been,
Or not remember what I must be now !
Swell'st thou, proud heart ? I'll give thee scope to beat,
Since foes have scope to beat both thee and me 141

Aum Northumberland comes back from Bolingbroke

K Rich What must the king do now ? must he submit ?
The king shall do it must he be deposed ?
The king shall be contented must he lose
The name of king ? o' God's name, let it go
I'll give my jewels for a set of beads,
My gorgeous palace for a hermitage,
My gay apparel for an almsman's gown,
My figured goblets for a dish of wood, 150
My sceptre for a palmer's walking-staff,
My subjects for a pair of carved saints
And my large kingdom for a little grave,
A little little grave, an obscure grave,
Or I'll be buried in the king's highway,
Some way of common trade, where subjects' feet
May hourly trample on their sovereign's head,
For on my heart they tread now whilst I live,
And buried once, why not upon my head ?
Aumerle, thou weep'st, my tender-hearted cousin ! 160
We'll make foul weather with dejected tears

And make a dearth in this revolting land
Or shall we play the wantons with our woes,
And make some pretty match with shedding tears?
As thus, to drop them still upon one place,
Till they have fretted us a pair of graves
Within the earth, and, therein laid,—there lies
Two kinsmen digg'd their graves with weeping eyes
Would not this ill do well? Well, well, I see 170
I talk but idly, and you laugh at me
Most mighty prince, my Lord Northumberland,
What says King Bolingbroke? will his majesty
Give Richard leave to live till Richard die?
You make a leg, and Bolingbroke says ay

North My lord, in the base court he doth attend
To speak with you, may it please you to come down.

K Rich Down, down I come, like glistering Phaethon,
Wanting the manage of unruly jades
In the base court? Base court, where kings grow base, 180
To come at traitors' calls and do them grace
In the base court? Come down? Down, court! down,
king!

For night-owls shriek where mounting larks should sing
[*Exeunt from above*]

Boling What says his majesty?

North Sorrow and grief of heart
Makes him speak fondly, like a frantic man
Yet he is come

Enter KING RICHARD and his attendants below

Boling Stand all apart,
And show fair duty to his majesty [He kneels down
My gracious lord,—

K Rich Fair cousin, you debase your princely knee 190

Than my displeased eye see your courtesy
Up, cousin, up, your heart is up, I know,
Thus high at least, although your knee be low

Boling My gracious lord, I come but for mine own

K Rich Your own is yours, and I am yours, and all

Boling So far be mine, my most redoubted lord,

As my true service shall deserve your love

K Rich Well you deserve they well deserve to have,
That know the strong'st and surest way to get 201

Uncle, give me your hands nay, dry your eyes,

Tears show their love, but want their remedies

Cousin, I am too young to be your father,

Though you are old enough to be my heir

What you will have, I'll give, and willing too,

For do we must what force will have us do

Set on towards London, cousin, is it so?

Boling Yea, my good lord

K Rich

Then I must not say no

[Flourish Exeunt]

SCENE IV *Langley The Duke of York's garden*

Enter the QUEEN and two Ladies

Queen What sport shall we devise here in this garden,
To drive away the heavy thought of care?

Lady Madam, we'll play at bowls

Queen. 'Twill make me think the world is full of rubs,
And that my fortune runs against the bias

Lady. Madam, we'll dance

Queen. My legs can keep no measure in delight,
When my poor heart no measure keeps in grief
Therefore, no dancing, girl, some other sport

Lady Of either, madam

Queen Of neither, girl

For if of joy, being altogether wanting,
It doth remember me the more of sorrow ,
Or if of grief, being altogether had,
It adds more sorrow to my want of joy
For what I have I need not to repeat ,
And what I want it boots not to complain

Lady Madam, I'll sing

Queen 'Tis well that thou hast cause ,
But thou shouldst please me better, wouldst thou weep 20

Lady I could weep, madam, would it do you good

Queen And I could sing, would weeping do me good,
And never borrow any tear of thee

Enter a Gardener, and two Servants

But stay, here come the gardeners
Let's step into the shadow of these trees
My wretchedness unto a row of pins,
They'll talk of state , for every one doth so
Against a change , woe is forerun with woe

[Queen and Ladies retire]

Gard Go, bind thou up yon dangling apricocks,
Which, like unruly children, make their sire 30
Stoop with oppression of their prodigal weight
Give some supportance to the bending twigs
Go thou, and like an executioner,
Cut off the heads of too fast growing sprays,
That look too lofty in our commonwealth
All must be even in our government
You thus employ'd I will go root away
The noisome weeds, which without profit suck
The soil's fertility from wholesome flowers

Showing, as in a model, our firm estate,
 When our sea-wall'd garden, the whole land,
 Is full of weeds, her fairest flowers choked up,
 Her fruit-trees all unpruned, her hedges ruin'd,
 Her knots disorder'd and her wholesome herbs
 Swarming with caterpillars ?

Gard Hold thy peace

He that hath suffer'd this disorder'd spring
 Hath now himself met with the fall of leaf
 The weeds which his broad-spreading leaves did shelter, 50
 That seem'd in eating him to hold him up,
 Are pluck'd up root and all by Bolingbroke,
 I mean the Earl of Wiltshire, Bushy, Green

Serv What, are they dead ?

Gard They are, and Bolingbroke

Hath seized the wasteful king O, what pity is it
 That he had not so trimm'd and dress'd his land
 As we this garden ! We at time of year
 Do wound the bark, the skin of our fruit trees,
 Lest, being over-proud in sap and blood,
 With too much riches it confound itself 60
 Had he done so to great and growing men,
 They might have lived to bear and he to taste
 Their fruits of duty superfluous branches
 We lop away, that bearing boughs may live
 Had he done so, himself had borne the crown,
 Which waste of idle hours hath quite thrown down

Serv What, think you then the king shall be deposed ?

Gard Depress'd he is already, and deposed
 'Tis doubt he will be letters came last night
 To a dear friend of the good Duke of York's, 70
 That tell black tidings

Queen O, I am press'd to death through want of speaking !
 [Coming forward]

What Eve, what serpent, hath suggested thee
To make a second fall of cursed man ?
Why dost thou say King Richard is deposed ?
Darest thou, thou little better thing than earth,
Divine his downfall ? Say, where, when, and how,
Can'st thou by this ill tidings ? speak, thou wretch 80

Gard Pardon me, madam little joy have I
To breathe this news, yet what I say is true
King Richard, he is in the mighty hold
Of Bolingbroke their fortunes both are weigh'd
In your lord's scale is nothing but himself,
And some few vanities that make him light,
But in the balance of great Bolingbroke,
Besides himself, are all the English peers,
And with that odds he weighs King Richard down
Post you to London, and you will find it so, 90
I speak no more than every one doth know

Queen Nimble mischance, that art so light of foot,
Doth not thy embassy belong to me,
And am I last that knows it ? O, thou think'st
To serve me last, that I may longest keep
Thy sorrow in my breast Come, ladies, go,
To meet at London London's king in woe
What, was I born to this, that my sad look
Should grace the triumph of great Bolingbroke ?
Gardener, for telling me these news of woe, 100
Pray God the plants thou graft'st may never grow

[Exeunt Queen and Ladies]

Gard Poor queen ! so that thy state might be no worse,
I would my skill were subject to thy curse
Here did she fall a tear, here in this place
I'll set a bank of rue, sour herb of grace
Rue, even for ruth here shortly shall be seen,
In the remembrance of a weeping queen

[Exeunt]

ACT IV

SCENE I *Westminster Hall*

Enter, as to the Parliament, BOLINGBROKE, AUWERLE, NORTH-UMBERLAND, PERCY, FITZWATER, SURREY, the BISHOP OF CARLISLE, the ABBOT OF WESTMINSTER, and another Lord, Herald, Officers, and BAGOT

Boling Call forth Bagot

Now, Bagot, freely speak thy mind ,
What thou dost know of noble Gloucester's death,
Who wrought it with the king, and who perform'd
The bloody office of his timeless end

Bagot Then set before my face the Lord Aumerle

Boling Cousin, stand forth, and look upon that man

Bagot My Lord Aumerle, I know your daring tongue
Scorns to unsay what once it hath deliver'd
In that dead time when Gloucester's death was plotted, 10
I heard you say, 'Is not my arm of length,
That reacheth from the restful English court
As far as Calais to mine uncle's head ?'
Amongst much other talk, that very time,
I heard you say that you had rather refuse
The offer of an hundred thousand crowns
Than Bolingbroke's return to England ,
Adding withal, how blest this land would be
In this your cousin's death.

Aum.

Princes and noble lords,
What answer shall I make to this base man ? 20
Shall I so much dishonour my fair stars,
On equal terms to give him chastisement ?
Either I must, or have mine honour soil'd
With the attander of his slanderous lips
There is my gage, the manual seal of death

And will maintain what thou hast said is false
In thy heart-blood, though being all too base
To stain the temper of my knightly sword

Boling Bagot, forbear, thou shalt not take it up 30

Aum Excepting one, I would he were the best
In all this presence that hath moved me so

Fitz If that thy valour stand on sympathy,
There is my gage, Aumerle, in gage to thine
By that fair sun which shows me where thou stand'st,
I heard thee say, and vauntingly thou spakest it,
That thou wert cause of noble Gloucester's death
If thou deny'st it twenty times, thou liest,
And I will turn thy falsehood to thy heart,
Where it was forged, with my rapier's point 40

Aum Thou darest not, coward, live to see that day

Fitz Now, by my soul, I would it were this hour

Aum Fitzwater, thou art damn'd to hell for this

Percy Aumerle, thou liest, his honour is as true
In this appeal as thou art all unjust,
And that thou art so, there I throw my gage,
To prove it on thee to the extremest point
Of mortal breathing seize it, if thou darest
Aum An if I do not, may my hands rot off
And never brandish more revengeful steel 50
Over the glittering helmet of my foe !

Another Lord I task the earth to the like, forsworn
Aumerle,

And spur thee on with full as many lies
As may be holloa'd in thy treacherous ear
From sun to sun there is my honour's pawn,
Engage it to the trial, if thou darest

Aum Who sets me else ? by heaven, I'll throw at all
I have a thousand spirits in one breast,
To answer twenty thousand such as you.

Fitz 'Tis very true you were in presence then ,
And you can witness with me this is true

Surrey As false, by heaven, as heaven itself is true

Fitz Surrey, thou liest

Surrey Dishonourable boy !

That lie shall lie so heavy on my sword,
That it shall render vengeance and revenge
Till thou the lie-giver and that lie do lie
In earth as quiet as thy father's skull

In proof whereof, there is my honour's pawn , 70
Engage it to the trial, if thou daiest

Fitz How fondly dost thou spur a forward horse !

If I dare eat, or drink, or breathe, or live,
I dare meet Surrey in a wilderness,
And spit upon him, whilst I say he lies,
And lies, and lies there is my bond of faith,
To tie thee to my strong correction

As I intend to thrive in this new world,
Aumerle is guilty of my true appeal
Besides, I heard the banish'd Norfolk say 80
That thou, Aumerle, didst send two of thy men
To execute the noble duke at Calais

Aum Some honest Christian trust me with a gage,
That Norfolk lies here do I throw down this,
If he may be repeal'd, to try his honour

Boling These differences shall all rest under gage
Till Norfolk be repeal'd repeal'd he shall be,
And, though mine enemy, restored again
To all his lands and signories when he's return'd,
Against Aumerle we will enforce his trial 90

Car That honourable day shall ne'er be seen
Many a time hath banish'd Norfolk fought
For Jesu Christ in glorious Christian field,
Streaming the ensign of the Christian cross

To Italy, and there at Venice gave
His body to that pleasant country's earth,
And his pure soul unto his captain Christ,
Under whose colours he had fought so long 100

Boling Why, bishop, is Norfolk dead?

Car As surely as I live, my lord

Boling Sweet peace conduct his sweet soul to the bosom
Of good old Abraham! Lords appellants,
Your differences shall all rest under gage
Till we assign you to your days of trial

Enter YORK, attended

York Great Duke of Lancaster, I come to thee
From plume-pluck'd Richard, who with willing soul
Adopts thee heir, and his high sceptre yields
To the possession of thy royal hand 110
Ascend his throne, descending now from him,
And long live Henry, fourth of that name!

Boling In God's name, I'll ascend the regal throne

Car Marry, God forbid!

Worst in this royal presence may I speak,
Yet best beseeching me to speak the truth
Would God that any in this noble presence
Were enough noble to be upright judge
Of noble Richard! then true noblesse would
Learn him forbearance from so foul a wrong 120
What subject can give sentence on his king?
And who sits here that is not Richard's subject?
Thieves are not judged but they are by to hear,
Although apparent guilt be seen in them,
And shall the figure of God's majesty,
His captain, steward, deputy-elect,
Anointed, crowned, planted many years,
Be judged by subject and inferior breath,

Should show so heinous, black, obscene a deed !
I speak to subjects, and a subject speaks,
Stirr'd up by God, thus boldly for his king
My Lord of Hereford here, whom you call king,
Is a foul traitor to proud Hereford's king
And if you crown him, let me prophesy
The blood of English shall manure the ground,
And future ages groan for this foul act ,
Peace shall go sleep with Turks and infidels,
And in this seat of peace tumultuous wars 140
Shall kin with kin and kind with kind confound ,
Disorder, horror, fear and mutiny
Shall here inhabit, and this land be call'd
The field of Golgotha and dead men's skulls
O, if you raise this house against this house,
It will the woofullest division prove
That ever fell upon this cursed earth
Prevent, resist it, let it not be so,
Lest child, child's children, cry against you ' woe '

North Well have you argued, sir , and for your pains 150
Of capital treason we arrest you here
My Lord of Westminster, be it your charge
To keep him safely till his day of trial
May it please you, lords, to grant the commons' suit

Boling Fetch hither Richard, that in common view
He may surrender , so we shall proceed
Without suspicion

York I will be his conduct [Exit

Boling Lords, you that here are under our arrest,
Procure your sureties for your days of answer
Little are we beholding to your love, 160
And little look'd for at your helping hands.

*Re-enter YORK, with RICHARD, and Officers, bearing
the regalia*

Before I have shook off the regal thoughts
Wherewith I reign'd ? I hardly yet have learn'd
To insinuate, flatter, bow, and bend my limbs
Give sorrow leave awhile to tutor me
To this submission Yet I well remember
The favours of these men were they not mine ?
Did they not sometime cry, 'all hail !' to me ?
So Judas did to Christ but he, in twelve, 170
Found truth in all but one, I, in twelve thousand,
none

God save the king ! Will no man say amen ?
Am I both priest and clerk ? well then, amen
God save the king ! although I be not he ,
And yet, amen, if heaven do think him me
To do what service am I sent for hither ?

York To do that office of thine own good will
Which tired majesty did make thee offer,
The resignation of thy state and crown
To Henry Bolingbroke 180

K Rich Give me the crown Here, cousin, seize the
crown ,
Here, cousin ,
On this side my hand, and on that side yours
Now is this golden crown like a deep well
That owes two buckets, filling one another,
The emptier ever dancing in the air,
The other down, unseen and full of water
That bucket down and full of tears am I,
Drinking my griefs, whilst you mount up on high.

Boling I thought you had been willing to resign 190

K Rich My crown I am , but still my griefs are mine
You may my glories and my state depose,
But not my griefs , still am I king of those

Boling Part of your cares you give me with your crown.

Your care is gain of care, by new care won
The cares I give I have, though given away ,
They tend the crown, yet still with me they stay

Boling Are you contented to resign the crown ? 200

K Rich Ay, no , no, ay , for I must nothing be ,
Therefore no no, for I resign to thee
Now mark me, how I will undo myself
I give this heavy weight from off my head
And this unwieldy sceptre from my hand,
The pride of kingly sway from out my heart ,
With mine own tears I wash away my balm,
With mine own hands I give away my crown,
With mine own tongue deny my sacred state,
With mine own breath release all duty's rites 210
All pomp and majesty I do forswear ,
My manors, rents, revenues I forgo ,
My acts, decrees, and statutes I deny
God pardon all oaths that are broke to me !
God keep all vows unbroke that swear to thee !
Make me, that nothing have, with nothing grieved,
And thou with all pleased, that hast all achieved !
Long mayst thou live in Richard's seat to sit,
And soon lie Richard in an earthy pit !
God save King Harry, unking'd Richard says, 220
And send him many years of sunshine days !
What more remains ?

North No more, but that you read
These accusations and these grievous crimes
Committed by your person and your followers
Against the state and profit of this land ,
That, by confessing them, the souls of men
May deem that you are worthily deposed

K Rich Must I do so ? and must I ravel out
My weaved-up folly ? Gentle Northumberland,
If thy offences were upon record

To read a lecture of them ? If thou wouldst,
There shouldst thou find one heinous article,
Containing the deposing of a king
And cracking the strong warrant of an oath,
Mark'd with a blot, damn'd in the book of heaven
Nay, all of you that stand and look upon,
Whilst that my wretchedness doth bait myself,
Though some of you with Pilate wash your hands
Showing an outward pity, yet you Pilates 240
Have here deliver'd me to my sour cross,
And water cannot wash away your sin

North My lord, dispatch, read o'er these articles

K Rich Mine eyes are full of tears, I cannot see
And yet salt water blinds them not so much
But they can see a sort of traitors here
Nay, if I turn mine eyes upon myself,
I find myself a traitor with the rest,
For I have given here my soul's consent
To undeck the pompous body of a king, 250
Made glory base and sovereignty a slave,
Proud majesty a subject, state a peasant

North My lord,—

K Rich No lord of thine, thou haught insulting man,
Nor no man's lord, I have no name, no title,
No, not that name was given me at the font,
But 'tis usurp'd alack the heavy day,
That I have worn so many winters out,
And know not now what name to call myself !
O that I were a mockery king of snow, 260
Standing before the sun of Bolingbroke,
To melt myself away in water-drops !
Good king, great king, and yet not greatly good,
An if my word be sterling yet in England,
Let it command a mirror hither straight,

Boling Go some of you and fetch a looking glass

[*Exit an attendant*]

North Read o'er this paper while the glass doth come

K Rich Friend, thou torment'st me ere I come to hell !

Boling Uge it no more, my Lord Northumberland 271

North The commons will not then be satisfied

K Rich They shall be satisfied I'll read enough,
When I do see the very book indeed
Where all my sins are writ, and that's myself

Re-enter Attendant, with a glass

Give me the glass, and therein will I read
No deeper wrinkles yet ? hath sorrow struck
So many blows upon this face of mine,
And made no deeper wounds ? O flattering glass,
Like to my followers in prosperity, 280
Thou dost beguile me ! Was this face the face
That every day under this household roof
Did keep ten thousand men ? was this the face
That, like the sun, did make beholders wink ?
Was this the face that faced so many follies,
And was at last out-faced by Bolingbroke ?
A brittle glory shineth in this face
As brittle as the glory is the face ,

[*Dashes the glass against the ground*]

For there it is, crack'd in a hundred shivers
Mark, silent king, the moral of this sport, 290
How soon my sorrow hath destroy'd my face

Boling The shadow of your sorrow hath destroy'd
The shadow of your face

K Rich Say that again
The shadow of my sorrow ! ha ! let's see
This very true, my grief lies all within ,
And these external manners of laments

There lies the substance and I thank thee, king,
For thy great bounty, that not only givest 300
Me cause to wail but teachest me the way
How to lament the cause I'll beg one boon,
And then be gone and trouble you no more
Shall I obtain it ?

Boling Name it, fair cousin

K Rich 'Fair cousin'? I am greater than a king
For when I was a king, my flatterers
Were then but subjects, being now a subject,
I have a king here to my flatterer
Being so great, I have no need to beg

Boling Yet ask 310

K Rich And shall I have ?

Boling You shall

K Rich Then give me leave to go

Boling Whither ?

K Rich Whither you will, so I were from your sights

Boling Go, some of you convey him to the Tower

K Rich O, good 'convey' ? conveyers are you all,
That rise thus numbly by a true king's fall

[*Exeunt King Richard, some Lords, and a Guard*]

Boling On Wednesday next we solemnly set down
Our coronation lords, prepare yourselves 320

[*Exeunt all except the Bishop of Carlisle, the Abbot of
Westminster, and Aumerle*]

Abbot A woeful pageant have we here beheld

Car The woe's to come, the children yet unborn
Shall feel this day as sharp to them as thorn

Aum You holy clergymen, is there no plot
To rid the realm of this pernicious blot

Abbot My lord,
Before I freely speak my mind herein,
You shall not only take the sacrament

I see your brows are full of discontent,
 Your hearts of sorrow and your eyes of tears
 Come home with me to supper, and I'll lay
 A plot shall show us all a merry day

[*Exeunt*]

ACT V

SCENE I *London A street leading to the Tower*

Enter QUEEN and Ladies

Queen This way the king will come, this is the way
 To Julius Cæsar's ill-erected tower,
 To whose flint bosom my condemned lord
 Is doom'd a prisoner by proud Bolingbroke
 Here let us rest, if this rebellious earth
 Have any resting for her true king's queen

Enter RICHARD and Guard

But soft, but see, or rather do not see,
 My fair rose wither yet look up, behold,
 That you in pity may dissolve to dew,
 And wash him fresh again with true-love tears 10
 Ah, thou, the model where old Troy did stand,
 Thou map of honour, thou King Richard's tomb,
 And not King Richard, thou most beauteous inn,
 Why should hard-favour'd grief be lodged in thee,
 When triumph is become an alehouse guest?

K Rich. Join not with grief, fair woman, do not so,
 To make my end too sudden learn, good soul,
 To thank our former state a happy dream,
 From which awaked, the truth of what we are
 Shows us but this. I am sworn brother, sweet, 20
 To grim Necessity, and he and I
 Will keep a league till death

Our holy lives must win a new world's crown,
Which our profane hours here have stricken down

Queen What, is my Richard both in shape and mind
Transform'd and weaken'd ? hath Bolingbroke deposed
Thine intellect ? hath he been in thy heart ?

The lion dying thrusteth forth his paw,
And wounds the earth, if nothing else, with rage 30
To be o'erpower'd , and wilt thou, pupil-like,
Take thy correction mildly, kiss the rod,
And fawn on rage with base humility,
Which art a lion and a king of beasts ?

K Rich A king of beasts, indeed , if aught but beasts,
I had been still a happy king of men

Good sometime queen, prepare thee hence for France
Think I am dead and that even here thou takest,
As from my death-bed, thy last living leave
In winter's tedious nights sit by the fire 40
With good old folks and let them tell the tales
Of woeful ages long ago betid ,

And ere thou bid good night, to quit their griefs,
Tell thou the lamentable tale of me

And send the hearers weeping to their beds

For why the senseless brands will sympathize

The heavy accent of thy moving tongue

And in compassion weep the fire out ,

And some will mourn in ashes, some coal-black,

For the deposing of a rightful king 50

Enter NORTHUMBERLAND and others

North My lord, the mind of Bolingbroke is changed ,
You must to Pomfret, not unto the tower

And, madam, there is order ta'en for you ,

With all swift speed you must away to France

K Rich Northumberland, thou ladder wherewithal
The mounting Bolingbroke ascends my throne,

More than it is ere foul sin gathering head
Shall break into corruption thou shalt think,
Though he divide the realm and give thee half, 60
It is too little, helping him to all,
And he shall think that thou, which know'st the way
To plant unrightful kings, wilt know again,
Being ne'er so little urged, another way
To pluck him headlong from the usurped throne
The love of wicked men converts to fear,
That fear to hate, and hate turns one or both
To worthy danger and deserved death

North My guilt be on my head, and there an end
Take leave and part, for you must part forthwith 70

K Rich Doubly divorced ' Bad men, you violate
A twofold marriage, 'twixt my crown and me,
And then betwixt me and my married wife
Let me unkiss the oath 'twixt thee and me,
And yet not so, for with a kiss 'twas made
Part us, Northumberland, I towards the north,
Where shivering cold and sickness pines the clime,
My wife to France from whence, set forth in pomp,
She came adorned hither like sweet May,
Sent back like Hallowmas or short'st of day 80

Queen And must we be divided? must we part?

K Rich Ay, hand from hand, my love, and heart from
heart

Queen Banish us both and send the king with me

North That were some love but little policy

Queen Then whither he goes, thither let me go

K Rich So two, together weeping, make one woe
Weep thou for me in France, I for thee here,
Better far off than near, be ne'er the near
Go, count thy way with sighs, I mine with groans

Queen So longest way shall have the longest moans 90

K Rich Twice for one step I'll groan, the way being

And piece the way out with a heavy heart
Come, come, in wooing sorrow let's be brief,
Since, wedding it, there is such length in grief
One kiss shall stop our mouths, and dumbly part,
Thus give I mine, and thus take I thy heart

Queen Give me mine own again, 'twere no good part
To take on me to keep and kill thy heart
So, now I have mine own again, be gone,
That I may strive to kill it with a groan

100

K Rich We make woe wanton with this fond delay
Once more, adieu, the rest let sorrow say [*Ereunt*]

SCENE II *The DUKE OF YORK's palace**Enter YORK and his DUCHESS*

Duch My lord, you told me you would tell the rest,
When weeping made you break the story off,
Of our two cousins coming into London

York Where did I leave?

Duch At that sad stop, my lord,
Where rude misgovern'd hands from windows' tops
Threw dust and rubbish on King Richard's head

York Then, as I said, the duke, great Bolingbroke,
Mounted upon a hot and fiery steed
Which his aspiring rider seem'd to know,
With slow but stately pace kept on his course, 10
Whilst all tongues cried 'God save thee, Bolingbroke!'
You would have thought the very windows spake,
So many greedy looks of young and old
Through casements darted their desiring eyes
Upon his visage, and that all the walls
With painted imagery had said at once
'Jesu preserve thee! welcome, Bolingbroke!'
Whilst he from the one side to the other turning,

Bespake them thus 'I thank you, countrymen ' 20
And thus still doing, thus he pass'd along

Duch Alack, poor Richard ' where rode he the whilst?

York As in a theatre, the eyes of men,
After a well-graced actor leaves the stage,
Are idly bent on him that enters next,
Thinking his prattle to be tedious ,
Even so, or with much more contempt, men's eyes
Did scowl on gentle Richard , no man cried ' God save him ' '
No joyful tongue gave him his welcome home
But dust was thrown upon his sacred head , 30
Which with such gentle sorrow he shook off,
His face still combating with tears and smiles,
The badges of his grief and patience,
That had not God, for some strong purpose, steel'd
The hearts of men, they must perforce have melted
And barbarism itself have pitied him
But heaven hath a hand in these events,
To whose high will we bound our calm contents
To Bolingbroke are we sworn subjects now,
Whose state and honour I for aye allow 40

Duch Here comes my son Aumerle

York Aumerle that was ,
But that is lost for being Richard's friend,
And, madam, you must call him Rutland now
I am in parliament pledge for his truth
And lasting fealty to the new made king

Enter AUMERLE

Duch Welcome, my son who are the violets now
That strew the green lap of the new come spring?

Aum Madam, I know not, nor I greatly care not
God knows I had as lief be none as one

York Well, bear you well in this new spring of time, 50

Aum For aught I know, my lord, they do

York You will be there, I know

Aum If God prevent not, I purpose so

York What seal is that, that hangs without thy bosom?

Yea, look'st thou pale? let me see the writing

Aum My lord, 'tis nothing

York No matter, then, who see it
I will be satisfied, let me see the writing

Aum I do beseech your grace to pardon me 60
It is a matter of small consequence,

Which for some reasons I would not have seen

York Which, for some reasons, sir, I mean to see
I fear, I fear,—

Duch What should you fear?
'Tis nothing but some bond, that he has entered into
For gay apparel 'gainst the triumph day

York Bound to himself? what doth he with a bond
That he is bound to? Wife, thou art a fool
Boy, let me see the writing

Aum I do beseech you, pardon me I may not show it

York I will be satisfied, let me see it, I say

[*He plucks it out of his bosom and reads it*
Treason, foul treason! Villain! traitor! slave!

Duch What is the matter, my lord?

York Ho! who is within there?

Enter a Servant

Saddle my horse

God for his mercy, what treachery is here!

Duch Why, what is it, my lord?

York Give me my boots, I say, saddle my horse.

[*Exit Servant*]

Now, by mine honour, by my life, by my troth,
I will appeach the villain.

Duch I will not peace What is the matter, Aumerle ?

Aum Good mother, be content, it is no more
Than my poor life must answer

Duch Thy life answer !

York Bring me my boots I will unto the king

Re-enter Servant with boots

Duch Strike him, Aumerle Poor boy, thou art amazed
Hence, villain ! never more come in my sight

York Give me my boots, I say

Duch Why, York, what wilt thou do ?
Wilt thou not hide the trespass of thine own ?
Have we more sons ? or are we like to have ? 90
Is not my teeming date drunk up with time ?
And wilt thou pluck my fair son from mine age,
And rob me of a happy mother's name ?
Is he not like thee ? is he not thine own ?

York Thou fond mad woman,
Wilt thou conceal this dark conspiracy ?
A dozen of them here have ta'en the sacrament,
And interchangeably set down their hands,
To kill the king at Oxford

Duch He shall be none ,
We'll keep him here then what is that to him ? 100

York Away, fond woman ! were he twenty times my son,
I would appeach him

Duch Hadst thou groan'd for him
As I have done, thou wouldst be more pitiful
But now I know thy mind , thou dost suspect
That I have been disloyal to thy bed,
And that he is a bastard, not thy son
Sweet York, sweet husband, be not of that mind
He is as like thee as a man may be,

York Make way, unruly woman ' [*Exit* 110
Duch After, Aumerle ! mount thee upon his horse ,
Spur post, and get before him to the king,
And beg thy pardon ere he do accuse thee
I ll not be long behind , though I be old,
I doubt not but to ride as fast as York
And never will I rise up from the ground
Till Bolingbroke have pardon'd thee Away, be gone !
[*Exeunt*

SCENE III *A royal palace*

Enter BOLINGBROKE, PERCY, and other Lords

Boling Can no man tell me of my unthrifty son ?
'Tis full three months since I did see him last
If any plague hung over us, 'tis he
I would to God, my lords, he might be found
Inquire at London, 'mongst the taverns there,
For there, they say, he daily doth frequent,
With unrestrained loose companions,
Even such, they say, as stand in narrow lanes,
And beat our watch, and rob our passengers ,
Which he, young wanton and effeminate boy, 10
Takes on the point of honour to support
So dissolute a crew

Percy My lord, some two days since I saw the prince,
And told him of those triumphs held at Oxford

Boling And what said the gallant ?

Percy His answer was, he would unto the stews,
And from the common'st creature pluck a glove,
And wear it as a favour , and with that
He would unhorse the lustiest challenger

Boling As dissolute as desperate , yet through both 20

Enter AUMERLE

Aum Where is the king ?

Boling What means our cousin, that he stares and looks
So wildly ?

Aum God save your grace ! I do beseech your majesty,
To have some conference with your grace alone

Boling Withdraw yourselves, and leave us here alone

[Exeunt Percy and Lords]

What is the matter with our cousin now ?

Aum For ever may my knees grow to the earth, 30
My tongue cleave to my roof within my mouth,
Unless a pardon ere I rise or speak

Boling Intended or committed was this fault ?
If on the first, how heinous e'er it be,
To win thy after-love I pardon thee

Aum Then give me leave that I may turn the key,
That no man enter till my tale be done

Boling Have thy desire

York *[Within]* My liege, beware, look to thyself,
Thou hast a traitor in thy presence there 40

Boling Villain, I'll make thee safe *[Drawing]*

Aum Stay thy revengeful hand, thou hast no cause to
fear

York *[Within]* Open the door, secure, fool-hardy king
Shall I for love speak treason to thy face ?
Open the door, or I will break it open

Enter YORK

Boling What is the matter, uncle ? speak,
Recover breath, tell us how near is danger,
That we may arm us to encounter it

York Peruse this writing here, and thou shalt know
The treason that my haste forbids me show 50

My heart is not confederate with my hand

York It was, villain, ere thy hand did set it down
I tore it from the traitor's bosom, king ,
Fear, and not love, begets his penitence
Forget to pity him, lest thy pity prove
A serpent that will sting thee to the heart

Boling O heinous, strong and bold conspiracy '
O loyal father of a treacherous son ' 60
Thou sheer immaculate and silver fountain,
From whence this stream through muddy passages
Hath held his current and defiled himself '
Thy overflow of good converts to bad ,
And thy abundant goodness shall excuse
This deadly blot in thy digressing son

York So shall my virtue be his vice's bawd ,
And he shall spend mine honour with his shame,
As thriftless sons their scraping fathers gold
Mine honour lives when his dishonour dies, 70
Or my shamed life in his dishonour lies
Thou kill'st me in his life , giving him breath,
The traitor lives, the true man's put to death

Duch [*Within*] What ho, my liege ' for God's sake, let
me in

Boling What shrill-voiced suppliant makes this eager
cry ?

Duch A woman, and thy aunt, great king , 'tis I
Speak with me, pity me, open the door
A beggar begs that never begg'd before

Boling Our scene is alter'd from a serious thing,
And now changed to 'The Beggar and the King' 80
My dangerous cousin, let your mother in

I know she is come to pray for your foul sin

York If thou do pardon, whosoever pray,
More sins for this forgiveness prosper may.

No word like 'pardon' for kings' mouths so meet

York Speak it in French, king, say, 'pardonne moi'

Duch Dost thou teach pardon pardon to destroy? 120

Ah, my sour husband, my hard-hearted lord,

That set'st the word itself against the word!

Speak 'pardon' as 'tis current in our land,

The chopping French we do not understand

Thine eyes begin to speak, set thy tongue there,

Or in thy piteous heart plant thou thine ear,

That hearing how our plaints and prayers do pierce,

Pity may move thee 'pardon' to rehearse

Boling Good aunt, stand up

Duch I do not sue to stand,

Pardon is all the suit I have in hand 130

Boling I pardon him, as God shall pardon me

Duch O happy vantage of a kneeling knee!

Yet am I sick for fear speak it again,

Twice saying 'pardon' doth not pardon twain,

But makes one pardon strong

Boling With all my heart

I pardon him

Duch A god on earth thou art

Boling But for our trusty brother-in-law and the abbot,

With all the rest of that consorted crew,

Destruction straight shall dog them at the heels.

Good uncle, help to order several powers 140

To Oxford, or where'er these traitors are

They shall not live within this world, I swear,

But I will have them, if I once know where

Uncle, farewell and, cousin too, adieu

Your mother well hath pray'd, and prove you true

Duch Come, my old son I pray God make thee new

Exeunt

SCENE IV *The same**Enter* EXTON *and* Servant

Exton Didst thou not mark the king, what words he spake,
'Have I no friend will rid me of this living fear?'
Was it not so?

Serv These were his very words

Exton 'Have I no friend?' quoth he he spake it twice,
And urged it twice together, did he not?

Serv He did

Exton And speaking it, he wistly look'd on me,
As who should say, 'I would thou wert the man
That would divorce this terror from my heart,'
Meaning the king at Pomfret Come, let's go 10
I am the king's friend, and will rid his foe

[*Exeunt*

SCENE V *Pomfret castle**Enter* KING RICHARD

K Rich I have been studyng how I may compare
This prison where I live unto the world
And for because the world is populous
And here is not a creature but myself,
I cannot do it, yet I'll hammer it out
My brain I'll prove the female to my soul,
My soul the father, and these two beget
A generation of still-breeding thoughts,
And these same thoughts people this little world,
In humours like the people of this world, 10
For no thought is contented The better sort,
As thoughts of things divine, are intermix'd

As thus, 'Come, little ones,' and then again,
'It is as hard to come as for a camel
To thread the postern of a small needle's eye'
Thoughts tending to ambition, they do plot
Unlikely wonders, how these vain weak nails
May tear a passage through the flinty ribs 20
(Of this hard world, my ragged prison walls,
And, for they cannot, die in their own pride
Thoughts tending to content flatter themselves
That they are not the first of fortune's slaves,
Nor shall not be the last, like silly beggars
Who sitting in the stocks refuge their shame,
That many have and others must sit there,
And in this thought they find a kind of ease,
Bearing their own misfortunes on the back
Of such as have before endured the like 30
Thus play I in one person many people,
And none contented sometimes am I king,
Then treasons make me wish myself a beggar,
And so I am then crushing penury
Persuades me I was better when a king,
Then am I king'd again, and by and by
Think that I am unking'd by Bolingbroke,
And straight am nothing but whate'er I be,
Nor I nor any man that but man is
With nothing shall be pleased, till he be eased 40
With being nothing *Music* do I hear? [Music
Ha, ha! keep time how sour sweet music is,
When time is broke and no proportion kept!
So is it in the music of men's lives
And here have I the daintiness of ear
To check time broke in a disorder'd string,
But for the concord of my state and time
Had not an ear to hear my true time broke

My thoughts are minutes , and with sighs they jar
Their watches on unto mine eyes, the outward watch,
Whereto my finger, like a dial's point,
Is pointing still, in cleansing them from tears
Now sir, the sound that tells what hour it is
Are clamorous groans, which strike upon my heart,
Which is the bell so sighs and tears and groans
Show minutes, times, and hours but my time
Runs posting on in Bolingbroke's proud joy,
While I stand fooling here, his Jack o' the clock 60
This music mads me , let it sound no more ,
For though it have help madmen to their wits,
In me it seems it will make wise men mad
Yet blessing on his heart that gives it me '
For 'tis a sign of love, and love to Richard
Is a strange brooch in this all-hating world

Enter a Groom of the Stable

Groom Hail, royal prince !

K Rich

Thanks, noble peer ,

The cheapest of us is ten groats too dear
What art thou ? and how comest thou hither
Where no man never comes but that sad dog 70
That brings me food to make misfortune live ?

Groom I was a poor groom of thy stable, king,
When thou wert king , who, travelling towards York,
With much ado at length have gotten leave
To look upon my sometimes royal master's face
O, how it yearn'd my heart when I beheld
In London streets, that coronation-day,
When Bolingbroke rode on roan Barbary,
That horse that thou so often hast bestrid,
That horse that I so carefully have dress'd ! 80

Groom So proudly as if he disdain'd the ground

K Rich So proud that Bolingbroke was on his back '
That jade hath eat bread from my royal hand ,
This hand hath made him proud with clapping him
Would he not stumble ? would he not fall down ,
Since pride must have a fall, and break the neck
Of that proud man that did usurp his back ?
Forgiveness, horse ' whv do I rail on thee, 90
Since thou, created to be awed by man,
Wast born to bear ? I was not made a horse ,
And yet I bear a burthen like an ass,
Spurr'd, gall'd and tired by jauncing Bolingbroke

Enter Keeper, with a dish

Keep Fellow, give place , here is no longer stay

K Rich If thou love me, 'tis time thou wert away

Groom What my tongue dares not, that my heart shall
say [Exit

Keep My lord, will 't please you to fall to ?

K Rich Taste of it first, as thou art wont to do 99

Keep My lord, I dare not Sir Pierce of Exton, who came
lately from the king, commands the contrary

K Rich The devil take Henry of Lancaster and thee '
Patience is stale, and I am weary of it [Beats the keeper

Keep Help, help, help !

Enter Exton and Servants armed

K Rich How now ! what means death in this rude
assault ?

Villain, thy own hand yields thy death's instrument

[Snatching an axe from a Servant and killing him
Go thou, and fill another room in hell

That staggers thus my person Exton, thy fierce hand 110
Hath with the king's blood stain'd the king's own land
Mount, mount, my soul ! thy seat is up on high ,
Whilst my gross flesh sinks downward, here to die [*Dies*

Eaton As full of valour as of royal blood
Both have I spill'd , O would the deed were good
For now the devil, that told me I did well,
Says that this deed is chronicled in hell
This dead king to the living king I'll bear
Take hence the rest, and give them burial here [*Exeunt*

SCENE VI *Windsor castle*

Flourish *Enter* BOLINGBROKE, YORK, *with other* Lords, *and*
Attendants

Boling Kind uncle York, the latest news we hear
Is that the rebels have consumed with fire
Our town of Cicester in Gloucestershire ,
But whether they be ta'en or slain we hear not

Enter NORTHUMBERLAND

Welcome, my lord what is the news ?

North First, to thy sacred state wish I all happiness
The next news is, I have to London sent
The heads of Salisbury, Spencer, Blunt, and Kent
The manner of their taking may appear
At large discoursed in this paper here 10

Boling We thank thee, gentle Percy, for thy pains ,
And to thy worth will add right worthy gains

Enter FITZWATER

Two of the dangerous consorted traitors
That sought at Oxford thy dire overthrow

Boling Thy pains, Fitzwater, shall not be forgot,
Right noble is thy merit, well I wot

Enter PERCY, and the BISHOP OF CARLISLE

Percy The grand conspirator, Abbot of Westminster,
With clog of conscience and sour melancholy 20
Hath yielded up his body to the grave,
But here is Carlisle living, to abide
Thy kingly doom and sentence of his pride

Boling Carlisle, this is your doom
Choose out some secret place, some reverend room,
More than thou hast, and with it joy thy life,
So as thou livest in peace, die free from strife
For though mine enemy thou hast ever been,
High sparks of honour in thee have I seen

Enter EXTON, with persons bearing a coffin

Eaton Great king, within this coffin I present 30
Thy buried fear herein all breathless lies
The mightiest of thy greatest enemies,
Richard of Bordeaux, by me hither brought

Boling Exton, I thank thee not, for thou hast wrought
A deed of slander with thy fatal hand
Upon my head and all this famous land

Eaton From your own mouth, my lord, did I this deed

Boling They love not poison that do poison need,
Nor do I thee though I did wish him dead, 40
I hate the murderer, love him murdered
The guilt of conscience take thou for thy labour,
But neither my good word nor princely favour

Lords, I protest, my soul is full of woe,
That blood should sprinkle me to make me grow
Come, mourn with me for that I do lament,
And put on sullen black incontinent
I'll make a voyage to the Holy Land,
To wash this blood off from my guilty hand
March sadly after , grace my mournings here ,
In weeping after this untimely bier

50

[*Exeunt*]

NOTES.

Abb indicates references to Abbott's *Shakespearian Grammar*

ACT I SCENE I

1 **Old John of Gaunt** The Duke of Lancaster, uncle to Richard the Second, was so called from his birthplace, Ghent, near Brussels, the continental pronunciation of the word being by the English thus corrupted Though spoken of as old, he was at this time only fifty eight years of age, but in Shakespeare's day the average life time was shorter than at present, and the epithet 'old' was earlier applied **time honour'd**, venerable

2 **oath and band**, bond confirmed by an oath, 'band' and 'bond' are merely phonetic variations of the same word, the latter form being the only one in use nowadays "When," says Steevens, "these public challenges were accepted, each combatant found a pledge for his appearance at the time and place appointed"

3 **Hereford**, pronounced as a dissyllable, and of old frequently written 'Herford' or 'Harford' The title came to him through his having married Mary de Bohun, second daughter of Humphrey, the last Earl of Hereford, and in 1397, he was by King Richard created Duke of Hereford He was surnamed Bolingbroke from having been born at his father's castle at Bolingbroke, in Lincolnshire

4 **to make good**, to prove, substantiate **the bolsterous late appeal**, the charge lately proclaimed in such violent language, an 'appeal' was a criminal charge or accusation made by one who undertook under penalty to prove it here impeachment of treason to be made good by combat

7 **liege**, paramount lord, sovereign, properly "faithful, subject, true, bound by tenure" The etymology is disguised by a change both of sense and usage We now say 'a *liege* vassal,' &c

liege lord,' and the older sense 'a free lord,' in exact contradiction to the popular notion. From O F *lige*, 'liege, leal, or loyal' (Littre) 'A *liege* lord' seems to have been a lord of a free band, and his *lieges*, though serving under him, were privileged men, free from all other obligations, their name being due to their *freedom*, not to their service" (Skeat, *Ety Dict*)

8 *sounded*, endeavoured by conversation on the subject to ascertain, cp *J C* ii 1 141, "But what of Cicero? shall we *sound* him?" The figure is from measuring the depth of water by a plummet

9 *If he malice*, whether the cause of his challenge is long standing animosity against the Duke of Norfolk

10 *worthily*, with good and sufficient reason

11 *On some him?* making the ground of his challenge some well ascertained act of treason

12 *As near argument*, so far as I could ascertain by closely questioning him on the subject. The idea in *sift* is that of separating the chaff from the corn, the pretexts that might be offered from the real truth, so, *Cymb* v 5 134, "bitter torture shall *Winnow* the truth from falsehood", *argument*, theme, subject, as frequently in Shakespeare

13 *apparent*, evident, not, 'seeming' *danger*, dangerous intentions cp, *R III* ii 3 27, "O, full of *danger* is the Duke of Gloucester"

16-7 *face speak*, the construction is 'we will hear the accuser and the accused freely speak face to face, and frowning brow to frowning brow'

18 *High stomach'd*, of haughty temperament, 'stomach' is used by Shakespeare figuratively of power of digestion, appetite, inclination, disposition, anger, resentment, stubborn courage, pride, arrogance

19 *In rage fire* In their rage as deaf to all attempts to moderate them as the sea in a storm, and as ready as fire to be kindled into a blaze

20 *Many*, etc To complete the metre, 'May,' 'Now,' and 'Full' have been proposed before *Many* Abbott thinks *years* may here perhaps, as elsewhere in Shakespeare, be regarded as a dissyllable

21 *loving*, as shown in the treatment of his subjects

22 *Each day still better*, i.e. *may* each day, etc for other, used as a singular pronoun, see Abb § 12

23 *envying hap*, envying the happiness of each in having

24 Add crown' Add to your glory as king on earth by making you immortal

25 but, only

26 by the cause you come, by the cause by (i e for) which you come For the omission of the preposition after come, cp *M M* ii 2 119, "Most ignorant of what he's most assured," i e assured of, *W T* iv 4 446, "To die upon the bed my father died," i e on which my father died

27 to appeal, see note on l 4

28 Cousin, here in its strict sense the son or daughter of an uncle or aunt, but frequently used by Shakespeare of any relationship not of the first degree An earl is now addressed by his sovereign as 'trusty and well beloved cousin,' and the term has been so used since the days of Henry IV, who introduced the practice of thus addressing his nobility in order to flatter them by making out that they were his blood-relations what thou dost object, what charge you have to bring against, cp *H VI* ii 4 46, "This blot that they object against your house", and with the preposition 'to,' *R III* ii 417, "Good faith, good faith, the saying did not hold In him that did object the same to thee" The word literally means to cast in the way of a person

30 heaven speech' may God be witness to the truth of my words' may my words be registered in heaven and I be punished if they are not true'

31 In the devotion love, out of such devotion as a loving subject should have toward his sovereign

32 Tendering prince, holding the safety of my prince as something very dear, 'tender,' in this sense, is from the F adjective *tendre*, tender, in the sense of 'offer,' 'proffer for acceptance,' also frequent in Shakespeare, from the F verb *tendre*, to spread, display In *Hamlet* i 3 107, 9, Shakespeare plays upon the two senses, "Tender yourself more dearly, Or you'll tender me a fool"

33 And free hate, and free from other feelings such as hatred for which there is no good cause

34 appellant, as impeacher, accuser

37 My body, I by hazarding my life make good, see note on l 4

38 Or my heaven, or, if I fail, my soul, which derives itself from God shall answer before Him for the charge I bring, for divine the Cl Pr Edd compare *A W* iii 6 31, "where 'the divine forfeit of his soul' is used in Shakespeare's manner for 'the forfeit of his divine soul'"

Skeat, the *mes* answers to the Lat *minus*, less, used in a bad sense

40 Too good live, by your origin and rank worthy to be something better than a traitor and miscreant, by your evil practices unworthy to live

41, 2 Since the more fly I say this since, etc, crystal, transparently bright, cp *Cymb* v 4 81, "Thy crystal window ope," addressed to Jove in heaven, that in it fly, that scud across it

43 the more note, to intensify the stigma I cast upon you, for aggravate, cp *M W* ii 2 296, 'Ford's a knave and I will aggravate his style,' i.e. heap further abusive epithets upon him, for note, cp *L L L* iv 3 125, "Ill, to example ill, Would from my forehead wipe a perjured note," i.e. a stigma of perjury

44 With a foul throat, I force down your throat the name of a foul traitor

45 so please my sovereign, if my sovereign so please, the condition being inferred in the subjunctive mood move, sc from this place

46 right drawn, drawn in a just cause

47 Let not zeal if my words are cold (i.e. not bombastic like those of Hereford), let them not be taken as showing want of earnestness, cp below, v 3 108, and i *H IV* iv 3 63, "With tears of innocency and terms of zeal" This peer was Thomas Mowbray, sixth Baron Mowbray, created Earl of Nottingham in 1383 and Duke of Norfolk in 1397

48 50 'Tis not twain, it is not by such contention as women love to indulge in, namely, the bitter and noisy war of words, that the cause at stake between us can be satisfied, eager, sharp, biting, from F *ang.e*, L *acer*, keen, used by Shakespeare of material things also, e.g. *Hamlet* i 4 2, "It is a nipping and an eager air," i 5 69, "eager droppings into milk", twain and two differ in gender only "Twain is masculine, whilst two is feminine and neuter, but this distinction was early disregarded" (Skeat, *Ety Dict*)

51 The blood this there is hot blood which must be cooled by being spilt, before this matter can be decided

52 Yet, i.e. though I do not imitate your braggart words

53 As to be hush'd, as to suffer myself to be terrified into silence.

54 the fair reverence, that reverence which is due to your majesty, highness, here a title

speech and spurring it on to a free course, free speech, a proleptic use, as below, 1 3 241, "A partial slander sought I to avoid"

56 would post, carrying on the metaphor in the former line, cp *Oth* 1 3 46, "haste, post haste appearance"

57 doubled, not only forced down his throat, but forced down with double vehemence of language

58 60 Setting aside liege, if his royal lineage may be put out of the question, and his relationship to you my sovereign be not taken into account

62 Which to maintain odds, in maintenance of which charge I would allow him advantage in the struggle, would accept combat even though we were not on equal terms

63 tied, obliged, for the construction of the word with an infinitive, cp *T S* 1 1 217, "And I am tied to be obedient" *Cor* 11 2 69, "But tie him not to be their bedfellow"

65 inhabitable, not habitable, the prefix *in* having the negative force as in Latin The Cl Pr Edd compare Ben Jonson's *Catiline*, v 1 54, "some inhabitable place Where the hot sun and slime breeds naught but monsters", and "inhabited" for "uninhabited" in Beaumont and Fletcher's *Thierry and Theodoret*, 111 1

66 durst, to 'dare' = to venture, have the courage to do a thing, has 'durst' in all persons singular and plural of the past indicative, when it means to 'challenge,' it makes a new preterite 'dared'

67, 8 Mean time lie For the meanwhile (i.e. until we meet in mortal combat) let this be an assurance of my loyalty that I swear by all the hopes I have here and hereafter that he lies most foully when he charges me with treason

69 gage, literally a pledge (that the person throwing it down will meet another in combat), the usual pledge in these cases was a glove or gauntlet

70 Disclaiming king, not putting in, as an excuse for not meeting you, any claim to relationship with the king

71 And lay royalty, and for the time being lay aside, etc

72 Which fear except, to which you take exception not from any reverence for the king, but purely out of fear, thinking in this way to shield yourself from fighting with me

74 mine honour's pawn, that which I throw down in pledge of holding myself in honour bound to meet you; cp *T G* 11 4

75 The rites of knighthood, those chivalrous duties by which a man is bound in the ceremony of knighthood

76 arm to arm, in personal combat, cp *Macb* i 2 56, "Till that Bellona's bridegroom Confronted him with self comparisons, Point against point rebellious, *arm against arm* "

77 or thou devise, or any more insulting terms that you can imagine

79 Which gently shoulder At the ceremony of knighthood, as the words 'Rise up, Sir So and so' are spoken by the king, he lays the flat side of his sword blade upon the shoulder of the person dubbed

80, 1 in any trial, in any trial of valour which by the laws of knightly combat are deemed fair and chivalrous

82 when I mount, *sc* my horse, such combats being on horse-back

83 unjustly fight, perhaps with a reference to the oath taken by combatants that they bore no charmed weapons

85, 6 It must him Any accusation which can possess us with so much as a thought of evil in him, must be a very weighty one This is the only passage in which Shakespeare uses *inherit* as a transitive verb

87 what I speak it, for the redundant pronoun, see Abb § 243

88 nobles' the 'noble' was a gold coin worth six shillings and eightpence

89 In name of lendings, obtained under the pretence that the money was for payment of your highness' soldiers

90 The which employments, which he has kept to himself for expenditure on his own vile purposes "The *which*' is generally used where the antecedent, or some word like the antecedent, is repeated, or else where such a repetition could be made if desired In almost all cases there are two or more possible antecedents from which selection must be made" (Abb § 270) So here the antecedent might be either *lendings* or *soldiers*, the former of course is really intended

91 injurious, pernicious, cp *Cymb* iv 2 86, "Thou *injurious* thief, Hear but my name and tremble " We no longer apply the epithet to a person

93 Or or, either or, 'or' is only 'other,' = the modern 'either' shortened, and 'other' 'other' was used as 'either' 'or' nowadays the furthest verge, the most distant country

95 for, during eighteen years, "i.e. since the great rising of

trive," in this sense, is used in *J C* ii 3 16, as a neuter verb, "If not, the Fates with traitors do *contrive* "

97 *Fetch spring*, had their origin in the brain of, etc

98, 9 and further good, and further will engage to substantiate in mortal combat my charges against his evil courses. It seems doubtful whether the construction here is 'maintain upon his bad life,' i.e. undertake by proof of his bad life to, etc (cp *Lear*, v 3 112, "If any man will *maintain upon* Edmund that he is a manifold traitor"), or 'maintain to make this good upon his bad life' Possibly, his bad life being equivalent to 'him who has lived so bad a life,' there should be a comma after *maintain*, the line following being parenthetical, with the sense 'on the condition of making this good upon his bad life,' for *maintain* is not elsewhere used by Shakespeare with another verb in subordination to it. The construction would then correspond with ll 92 and 95 *bad life* for the sake of the antithesis with *make good*

100 *The duke death* Thomas of Woodstock, the youngest son of Edward the Third, was murdered at Calais in 1397

101 *Suggest*, prompt in an underhand manner, cp *Cor* ii 1 261, "We must *suggest* the people in what hatred He still hath held them" soon believing, only too ready to listen to his suggestions

102 *consequently*, as a sequel to his suggestions, cp *T N* iii 4 79, "'Cast thy humble slough,' says she and *consequently* sets down the manner how", *K J* iv 2 240, "Yea, without stop, didst let thy heart consent, And *consequently* thy rude hand to act" *traitor*, used as an adjective = treacherous

103 *sluiced out*, caused to rush forth in a torrent, as water rushes forth when the flood gates are lifted Cp *Oth* i. 3 56, "for my particular grief Is of so flood gate and o'erbearing nature That," etc

104 *which blood*, "Which being an adjective frequently accompanies the repeated antecedent, where definiteness is required, or where care must be taken to select the right antecedent" "And, if she did play false, the fault was hers, *Which fault* lies," etc (Abb § 269) like *sacrificing Abel's*, see *Genesis*, iv 10, "The voice of thy brother's blood crieth unto me from the ground "

105 *tongueless caverns*, the bowels of the earth which, though without tongues, yet cry aloud, cp *J C* iii 2 229, 30, "Show you sweet Caesar's wounds, poor poor dumb mouths, And bid them speak for me "

descent "I swear by the noble blood of

108 **spent**, sacrificed in the endeavour, cp *Cymb* v 3 81, "On either side I come to *spend my breath*," i.e. to lose my life

109 **pitch**, a technical term for the highest point to which a hawk towers, cp, for the literal sense, *H VI* ii 1 6, "But what a point, my lord, your falcon made, And what a *pitch* she flew above the rest", for the figurative sense, *J C* i 1 78, "These growing feathers pluck'd from Cæsar's wing Will make him fly an ordinary *pitch* "

113 **this slander of his blood**, this man whose life is a disgrace to those with whom he is related by blood, the king included

117 **As he is but**, instead of being, as he is, only my, etc

118 **my sceptre's awe**, that awe which my sceptre (the symbol of power) inspires in my subjects, cp *M V* iv 1 190, 1, "His *sceptre* shows the force of temporal power, The attribute to *awe* and majesty "

119. **neighbour nearness**, close relationship, cp, for the adjectival use of **neighbour**, *H IV* iv 5 124, "Now, *neighbour* confines, purge you of your scum "

120, 1 **should nothing** soul, should in no way shield him from punishment, nor turn to partiality the firmness of my nature which will not stoop to any injustice

122 **so art thou**, i.e. so far as I am concerned, you are both upon an equality

124, 5 **as low liest**, right down to the very depths of your heart you lie To 'lie in the throat' was worse than to 'lie from the lips,' and to 'lie in the heart' a degree still worse Staunton on *H IV* i 2 94, quotes from an old Italian treatise on War and the Duello a passage in which the different gradations of giving the lie are enumerated as the simple 'Thou liest', then, 'Thou liest in the throat', 'Thou liest in the throat like a rogue', 'Thou liest in the throat like a rogue as thou art,' the last being an insult which could not be passed by without a challenge to combat

126 **that receipt**, that which I received I had, *which* I had, for the omission of the relative, see Abb § 244

128 **reserved**, kept to myself

129 **For that**, on 'that' as a conjunctive affix, see Abb § 151

130 **Upon remainder account**, in the matter of the balance of a heavy sum still due from him, dear, as an intensive, is frequent in Shakespeare

at Calais in 1396 while she was yet a child some nine years old

132 For, as regards

133, 4 but to my own disgrace case "Norfolk always denied having killed Gloster and by the words 'neglected my sworn duty,' he probably refers to his having failed to place Gloster in the Tower, and having taken him instead to Calais, where he was, according to Holinshed smothered in his bed by servants commissioned to do so' (C. Clarke)

138 A trespass soul, a sin which grievously distresses my soul, to 'ven' in former days was used with a stronger meaning than it now bears, it being in modern language applied chiefly to petty troubles

139 But ere sacrament, a full confession of sin, being a condition enforced by the Church before the sacrament could be partaken of

140 exactly, on every point, stating each particular for which forgiveness was desired cp. A. C. v. 2 139, "This is the brief of money, plate, and jewels I am possessed of, tis *exactly* valued"

142 as for appeal'd, as for all the other charges brought against me, see note on l. 4

143 It issues villain, it is born of the malice of, etc

144 recreant, cowardly, "properly the present participle of *recroire*, 'to believe again, also to restore, deliver, or give back,' (Cotgrave) the present participle *recreant* and past participle *recreu* partook of the sense of Low Lat *recredere*, from which F. *recroire* is derived This verb, literally to believe again, or to alter one's faith was also used in the phrase *se recredere*, to own oneself beaten in a duel or judicial combat" (Skeat, *Ety Dict*) degenerate, i.e. from the noble race of which he is sprung

145 in myself, in my own person

146 interchangeably, in exchange for the gage which he has thrown down

147 Upon, at

148 To prove, in token that I will prove

149 Even bosom, by shedding the best blood locked up in his heart

150 In haste whereof, for the hastening of which

153 Let's purge blood, let us physic this choleric disease, under which you are both labouring, without bleeding

156 **conclude and be agreed**, come to a mutual and final agreement, cp *Cor* iii 1 145, "where gentry, title, wisdom Cannot *conclude* but by the yea and no Of general ignorance "

157 **Our doctors bleed** In days when bleeding was an almost universal remedy, quacks pretended to foretell what seasons were favourable for the operation Cp Fletcher, *The Chances*, 1 8 79, "Why, all physicians And penny almanacks allow the opening Of veins this month "

160 **To be age**, it cannot but become an old man like me to be a peacemaker, and therefore I will undertake the task

162 **When, Harry, when?** how long are you going to delay doing what I bid you? An exclamation of impatience very common in the old dramatists

163 **Obedience again**, the obedience you owe to me as your father enjoins that I should not have to repeat my command

164 **no boot**, nothing to be gained by refusing, *i e* it is vain for you to refuse when your king commands, boot, A S *bot*, profit, advantage

165 **My life shame**, I am ready to lay down my life at your bidding, but not to sacrifice my honour

168 **Despite grave**, which in spite of death will still live honourably upon my grave

169 **To dark have**, I will not place in your hands to turn to disgrace, the gloom of the grave I can endure, but not the deep shadow of dishonour

170 **impeach'd** "The word 'impeach' means, originally, 'to hinder,' from the French *empêcher*, and thence 'to accuse,' because the first step in an accusation is to secure the personal attendance of the accused on the day of trial, thus impeding his free action" (Cl Pr Edd) **baffled**, foiled, disgraced "The history of the word is recorded by Hall Chron Henry VIII, anno 5 Richardson quotes the passage to show that *to baffull* is 'a great reproach among the Scottes, and is used when a man is openly periured, and then they make of him an image paynted reuersed, with his heeles upward, with his name, wondering, cryenge, and blowing out of [*i e* at] hym with hornes, in the moost despitefull manner they can'" (Skeat, *Ety Dict*) The etymology of the word is doubtful

172, 3 **his heart-blood which**, the heart blood of him who, etc cp *H V* ii 2 27, "heart-grief "

174 **lions tame**, according to Malone an allusion to the lion of England and the golden leopard, the crest of the house of

expression need not be taken to mean anything else than that the more powerful animal makes the less powerful one to cower down before it, i.e. that a duke must yield to a king

175 but not spots a reference to *Jeremiah*, xiii 23, "Can the Ethiopian change his skin, or the leopard his spots?" his, the king's allusion is a general one intended to be taken particularly and so Norfolk by his answer takes it take but my shame, if, by taking it upon yourself, you will relieve me of the disgrace which I should incur by surrendering the gage thrown down for my acceptance I at once, etc

177 mortal times, human life

178 that away that being lost

179 Men are clay, a man is nothing nobler than a piece of, etc Cp *Hamlet* i 1 231 3, "Alexander died, Alexander was buried, Alexander returneth into dust, the dust is earth, or the earth we make loam"

180 a ten times barr'd-up chest, a chest secured, in the strongest possible manner

182 is my life, i.e. the two things are identical

184 mine honour try, let me make trial of my honour in combat with him who has endeavoured to destroy it, for the transposition in dear my liege, see Abb § 13

186 throw up, abandon

188 Shall I sight? Do you wish that I should be humbled in the sight of my father, who should be the last of all men to witness my disgrace?

189, 90 Or with dastard? Or that in the presence of this craven, who stands here cowed by my defiance, I should wrong my nobility by the pallor of that fear which the faces of none but beggars should wear? For pale beggar-fear, cp *Macb* iv 1 85, "That I may tell pale hearted fear it lies", for impeach, see note on l 170

191 with such feeble wrong, by an insult showing such weakness

192 Or sound parle, or basely make overtures for peace A 'parle' or 'parley' was a conference with a view to negotiations, and an invitation to it was commonly given by the sound of a trumpet, cp *K J* ii 1 205, "Our trumpet call'd you to this gentle parle"

193 The slavish fear, that which would act as the instrument of fear in slavishly retracting what had been boldly uttered, for motive, cp *A W* iv 4 20, "As it hath fated her

194, 5 in his face, with bitter insult in the face of Mowbray where shame dwells as though it were its home

197 Which since friends, and since our command is powerless to make you friends

198 as your it, on peril of your lives if you fail to appear

199 Coventry, in Warwickshire, about nineteen miles from Birmingham Saint Lambert's day, September 17th

200 arbitrate, determine cp *Macb* v 4 20, "But certain issue strokes must *arbitrate*" Literally, to act as an umpire, and so used in *R J* iv 1 63, "This bloody knife Shall play the umpire, *arbitrating* that Which the commission of thy years and act Could to no issue of true honour bring"

201 The swelling hate, the quarrel now so inflated by your inveterate hatred, cp *Lear*, iv 4 27, "No *bloun* ambition doth our arms incite"

202 atone, reconcile, literally 'make at one', cp *A C* ii 2 102, "The present need speaks to *atone* you"

203 we shall chivalry we are determined that a trial of arms shall, by the prowess of the victor, decide whose cause is just, justice shall mark out by the victory of the one or the other on whose side right is C Clarke remarks, "There is peculiar appropriateness in the employment of the word [*design*] here, because *designator* was a term applied to 'a *marshal*, a master of the play or prize, who appointed every one his place, and adjudged the victory'"

204, 5 Lord Marshal alarms Lord Marshal, command that our officers at arms be ready to regulate the decision of this home bred quarrel, home alarms, contrasted with alarms of foreign invasion, the officers at arms were those charged with the management of tournaments and combats like the present one, of a more deadly nature Norfolk himself was Lord Marshal, and on this occasion his duties were discharged by the Duke of Surrey To mend the metre here, some editors omit Lord.

SCENE II

STAGE DIRECTION The Duchess of Gloucester, Eleanor Bohun, widow of Thomas, son of Edward the Third

1. the part blood, my relationship to Gloster

2, 3 Deth more life' urges me more strongly than your outcries to take steps against those who so foully murdered him, i.e. if anything could move me to seek their punishment, it would

4, 5 But since heaven, but since punishment belongs to those to whom the sin which we cannot punish, is due. *Grant* hints that Richard had a share in Gloucester's murder, and later on openly accuses him of it

6 Put we heaven, let us leave our cause of complaint to be decided by heaven when it shall please to do so

7 they, Shakespeare frequently uses heaven as a plural, e.g. *Macb* II 1 4, *Oth* IV 2 47, *R III* V 5 20

9 Finds spur? Does not the tie of brotherhood prompt you to any speedier vengeance? are you really content to wait till heaven shall see fit to exact vengeance?

10 Hath fire? is your love but in ashes? is it but as burnt out coals?

14, 5 Some of those cut, the same thought repeated in both lines, in the former the imagery referring to 'vials' in the latter to "branches", though strictly speaking, it was the 'thread of life,' that Atropos, the third Destiny cut. Those that died a natural death were Edward, the Black Prince, William of Hatfield, Lionel of Antwerp, and William of Windsor

20 his summer faded, his life being cut off in its prime

21 envy's, here, as frequently in Shakespeare, the word is used in the sense of hatred, malice

22 his blood was thine, you and he were of the same blood

23 self mould, for 'self' as an adjective, see Abb § 20

25 in him, by his death

26 28 thou dost life In seeing your brother murdered, your brother who was the copy of your father, without attempting to avenge his murder, you are in a large measure a party to your father's death. For consent, cp 1 *H VI* 1 5 34, "You all consented unto Salisbury's death", *Oth* V 2 297, "Did you and he consent in Cassio's death?", model is used by Shakespeare both of a pattern after which something is to be made, and of the thing made in imitation of a pattern

29 despair, despondency, want of courage

31 Thou showest life, you show your enemies how without obstacle they may make their way to your life

35 to safeguard, to protect, cp *H V* 1 2 176, "Since we have locks to safeguard necessities"

38 His deputy sight "Mr Staunton punctuates thus 'His deputy anointed, in His sight Hath caused his death' We have adhered to the old stopping because the king was anointed

His sight This part of the ceremony made the greater impression as the king was stripped to the waist" (Cl Pr Edd)

40 I may never, it is impossible for me ever "In 'I may not come' *may* would with us mean 'possibility,' and the 'not' would be connected with 'come' instead of *may*, 'my not coming is a possibility' On the other hand, the Elizabethans frequently connect the 'not' with *may*, and thus with them 'I may not come' might mean 'I can-not or must not come' Thus *may* is parallel to 'must' in the following passage — 'Yet I must not, For certain friends that are both his and mine, Whose loves I may not drop'—*Macb* iii 1 122" (Abb § 310)

41 against His minister, it is the fact of Richard being God's minister, vice-gerent on earth, not any other cause, which deters me from lifting a hand against him

42 complain myself, Steevens gives several instances from old writers of "complain" as a transitive verb (though none of the reflexive use, as here), and Mason observes that the phrase complain myself is a literal translation of the French *me plaindre*

46 cousin, see note on 1 1 28 fall, cruel, A S *fel*, fierce, dire

47 sit, optative, may they sit'

49 if misfortune career, if he escape misfortune at the first onset, career was a technical term in tilting for the encounter at full speed of the mounted knights

53 A cattiff recreant to, a miserable apostate yielding himself captive to, etc, cattiff, literally a captive, Skeat quotes Chaucer, *Troilus and Cressida*, iii 331, "*Cattif* to cruel Kynge Agamemnon," = captive to the cruel King Agamemnon, recreant, properly a present participle, and literally one who believes again, and so changes his faith, an apostate

54 sometimes, formerly, Shakespeare uses "sometimes" and "sometime" indifferently for 'from time to time,' 'once,' 'formerly'

55 With her life, must pass the remainder of her life with no other companion than grief, cp *K. J* iii 1 73, "here I and sorrow sit, Here is my throne, bid Kings come bow to it"

57. As much good, etc, : e *may* as, etc

58, 9 grief weight it is not its emptiness which causes grief to rebound, as hollow balls do, but its weight, : e if my grief reiterates itself, it is not because it is so light, but because it is so heavy

reality passed away : do not suppose, from my now saying no more of my sorrows, that they are in any way healed

62 Commend, give loving messages from me to, etc

65 what? : what was it I wished to say?

66 With all good speed, as quickly as I possibly can *Flashy* in Essex, midway between Chelmsford and Dunmow was the residence of the lord high constables of England and was occupied by the Duchess in virtue of her husband having held that office

67 Alack, probably, according to Skeat, a corruption of *ah*, *lah*, M E loss misfortune, and so meaning 'ah' failure, or 'ah' a loss' and what, etc., : and yet what good 's it my asking him to visit me there, for what will he find except, etc

68 lodgings, apartments chambers cp II *H IV* iv 5 234, "Doth any name particular belong Unto the *lodging* where I first did swoon?" unfurnish'd walls no longer, as in former days, hung with rich tapestry

69 offices, those belonging to servants, the kitchens, pantries, etc The Duchess means that she can no longer show her old hospitality to visitors

70 for welcome, in the way of welcome

71 Therefore there therefore, though I still ask you to carry my kind messages, do not bid him come to me, as I just now asked you to do

72 To seek where, : for there he will find nothing but sorrow, and that he need not take a journey to find, for it is to be found everywhere

73 will I hence, the verb of motion omitted, as frequently with adverbs and prepositions

74 The last eye For the last time, with weeping eyes, I bid you farewell

SCENE III

1 Aumerle Edward Plantagenet, eldest son of the Duke of York, was made Duke of Albemarle, or Aumerle, by Richard II., and afterwards "for being Richard's friend" (v 2 42) was degraded by Henry IV to his former title, Earl of Rutland At the combat between Mowbray and Bolingbroke he officiated as Lord High Constable

3 sprightly and bold, for this ellipsis of the adverbial inflection, see Abb § 397

STAGE DIRECTION *When they are set, i.e. seated*

9, 10 and orderly cause, and, in accordance with the regular procedure in such cases, administer to him an oath that his cause is just For swear, used transitively, cp *J C* II 1 129, "Swear priests and cowards and men cautelous"

14 on thy oath, by virtue of your character as a knight, and of the oath you took when you were made one, a hendiadys for 'knightly oath'

15 As so defend valour, as you hope that heaven and your valour may protect you in accordance with your prayer—the prayer customary on such occasions, "defend me heaven," used by him in I 25

17 engaged, bound

18 defend, forbid, frequent in Shakespeare, e.g. *Oth* I 3 267, "And heaven defend your good souls that you think," etc., I *H* IV IV 3 38, "And God defend but still I should stand so"

20 my succeeding issue "Notwithstanding that the emendation of the Folios [*his*] yields an easier sense, we follow the reading of the Quartos, which may be explained, inasmuch as the Duke of Norfolk's 'succeeding issue' would be involved in the forfeiture incurred by disloyalty to his king It may also be noted that King Richard had never any issue" (*Cambridge Shakespeare*)

21 appeals, see note on I 1 4

23 in myself, we should now say either 'in defending myself, or 'in the defending of myself', see Abb §§ 93, 178

25 as, according as

28 plated war, habited in plate armour, broad solid armour as distinguished from mail, which was composed of small pieces or scales

30 Depose cause Cause him to make his deposition on oath that his cause is just Shakespeare does not elsewhere use the transitive verb in this sense

32 lists were the space enclosed for the combat

34. so defend, according as you hope that heaven may protect you

42. no person be, let no person be

43 daring-hardy, on compound adjectives in which the first has an adverbial force, see Abb § 2 as to lists, i.e. in order to interfere with the combatants

44, 5 such officers designs, the officers appointed to see that

1 1 80, 1, "I'll answer thee in any *fair* degree, or chivalrous *design* of knightly trial" We should now say either 'such officers as are appointed,' or 'the officers appointed'

50 a ceremonious leave, a formal farewell such as persons under the circumstances usually take, not the mere brief words used when parting for a short time only

51 several, each of his own friends

52 in all duty, with all dueous subjection

56 royal, because the combat was to take place in the presence of the king

57 my blood, you who are of the same blood as myself

58 dead, when dead

59, 60 O, let spear, "Bolingbroke means if he were to be slain by Mowbray, he would shew himself unworthy of being lamented, and it would be a profanation to weep for him" (Cl Pr Edd), gored, pierced, "formed as a verb from M E *gare*, *gor*, *gar*, a spear" (Skeat, *Ety Dut*)

61 as is flight as is the falcon when about to swoop down upon its quarry

65 I have death, my business is with death

66 cheerly, cheerly

67 at English feasts "The custom of ending a great dinner with confectionery of elaborate structure was general throughout England in Shakespeare's time, and still exists in college halls From the emphasis laid upon 'English, the author seems to imply that the custom was peculiar to this country Compare Bacon (*Life and Letters*, ed Spedding, vol iii, p 215, note) "Let not this Parliament end, like a Dutch feast, in salt meats, but, like an English feast, in sweet meats" (Cl Pr Edd) regret, greet

68 the daintiest, *sc* viands

70 regenerate, born anew in me

71 twofold, *ie* his own and that of his father

72 To reach at head, cp 1 *H IV* 1 3 202, "To pluck bright honour from the pale faced moon"

73 Add proof, make it doubly proof against the weapons of my enemy, 'proof armour,' or 'armour of proof,' was armour the strength of which had been proved or tested So, we still speak of proving a sword, gun barrel, cannon, etc

75 waxen coat, coat which to the touch of my lance shall be as penetrable as if made of wax cp *T N* 11. 2 31, "How easy is it for the proper-false In women's *waxen* hearts to set their

76 And furbish Gaunt, and give a fresh lustre to, etc , a Gaunt, i.e. of Gaunt

77 lusty haviour, brave demeanour in battle even adds an emphasis to the words

80 doubly redoubled, so, in *Macb* 1 2 28, "Doubly redoubled strokes upon the foe", redoubled is metrically a quadrisyllable

81 amazing, which confounds, bewilders, the word was in Shakespeare's day used in a more forcible sense than it now has, cp *K J* iv 2 137, "Bear with me, cousin, for I was amazed Under the tide" Probably from a intensive and *maze*, a labyrinth, confusion casque, helmet

82 Of thy enemy, of the pernicious enemy opposed to you

84 Mine innocency thrive! May my innocence (of all treason) and the help of St George (the patron saint of England) help me to succeed!

88 with a freer heart, with a heart more lightened by freedom

90 golden, precious uncontroll'd, 'control' is short for *counter rolle*, the old form of *counter roll* — O F *contre rôle*, a duplicate register used to verify the official or first roll" (Skeat, *Ety Dict*)

91 dancing, i.e. with joy, cp *Cor* iv 5 122, "but that I see thee here, Thou noble thing! more dances my rapt heart", and v 3 99, "Make our eyes flow with joy, hearts dance with comforts"

92 this feast of battle, this combat which is as a feast to me

93 peers, equals in rank

95 as to jest, "as if I were going to a mock fight" (Schmidt), others explain the words as taking part in a masque or revel

96 truth hath a quiet breast, there is no doubt or disquietude in those who know their cause to be just

97 securely, with certainty, perfect assurance

98 couched, calmly reposing

102 amen, so be it

105 for God, in God's cause

106 On pain recreant, it being the penalty of his not proving Norfolk to be a traitor that he himself shall be declared false and recreant

108 him, i.e. Bolingbroke

112 approve. prove. as frequently in Shakespeare, e.g. 11

114 with a free desire, eagerly desiring

115 attending, waiting

STAGE DIRECTION *A charge*, a set of notes on the trumpet giving the signal for the onset

117 warder, a truncheon borne by those who presided at such combats, the throwing down of which was a signal for the combat to cease

118 lay by put off, lay aside

121 Withdraw with us, said to the peers about him

122 while we decree, till we announce to these dukes what our decree in the matter is, for *while*=till cp *Marb* iii 1 44, "*while* then, God be with you", and '*whiles* *I N* iv 3 29 "He shall conceal it *Whiles* you are willing it shall come to note" for return, cp *Per* ii 2 3, "*Return them*, we are ready

123 Draw near, said to the two combatants

124 And list done, and listen to the decision at which in deliberation with our counsel we have arrived

125 For that in order that, 'for with the indicative meant 'because,' with the future or conditional 'in order that

126 fostered, nourished, 'foster,' A S *foster*, nourishment from A S *joda*, food

128 Of civil sword, of wounds dealt in civil war by the hands of those who are neighbours (and therefore should be friends) The only known copies of the first quarto give 'cruel' for civil, and that reading is adopted by Dyce

129 eagle winged, soaring aloft like the eagle

131 rival hating envy, jealous hatred set on you, instigated you

132, 3 which in sleep, which now has been rocked to a sleep as calm as that of an infant The folios and the fifth quarto omit ll 129-33, which were restored by Pope from the quarto of 1598

134 Which, *sc* sleep

134-7 Which so peace, the meaning seems to be 'from which sleep peace being awakened with,' etc, might be driven from our quiet confines, untuned, discordant

135 bray, a word especially applied to the clangour of trumpets

136 grating shock clash of arms in the shock of battle

138 banish is as frequently used without the preposition as

142 **regreet**, greet again

143 **stranger**, a substantive used as an adjective, cp *M N D* 1 1 219, "To seek new friends and *stranger* companies"

147 Shall point on me, shall shine down on me **gild**, give a radiance which it would not otherwise have

150, 1 The **sly** **exile**, the hours, as they creep along with noiseless, stealthy step, shall not bring an end to the grievous exile imposed upon you, its limit being one to which there is no date set For **sly** the second folio gives 'fly,' which, with a hyphen, some editors adopt, and perhaps the idea of the stealthy, imperceptible, movement of time, involved in **sly**, is hardly in keeping with the tediousness that the hours would have to one in exile **determinate**, "a legal word applied to a bond Cp *Sonn lxxxvii* 4, 'My bonds in thee are all *determinate*' The expression 'determinate the dateless limit' is pleonastic 'Dateless' is used in a legal sense in *R J* v 3 115, 'A *dateless* bargain to engrossing death'" (Cl Pr Edd) **dear**, used as an intensive, grievously felt, cp *Tim* v 1 231, "*dear* peril," *Oth* 1 3 260, "*dear* absence," in both cases meaning bitterly felt

152 The **hopeless** return, for word, used of a phrase, cp *R J* 1 4 40, "Tut, 'dun's the mouse,' the constable's own *word*"

156 A **dearer** **maim**, a richer reward, not so cruel an injury Monck Mason points out that as Shakespeare here uses **merit** in the sense of 'reward,' so he frequently uses 'meed,' which properly means 'reward,' for 'merit' Johnson objects to the phrase to 'deserve a merit', but probably if it had not been for the parenthetical line, "As to be cast forth in the common an," we should have had some other word, such as 'expected,' for **deserved**, and, further, **deserved**, though not a suitable word with **merit**, is perfectly suitable with **maim**, the nearer of the two objects

159 These forty years, Mowbray is apparently speaking in round numbers, for, as the Cl Pr Edd point out, he could not at this time have been more than two and thirty years old

161 **forgo**, usually but inaccurately spelt 'forego,' is, like 'forbid,' 'fordo,' 'forgive,' etc, formed from the intensive 'for,' = through, thoroughly, and 'go'

162 **viol**, "a six stringed guitar This speech is entirely Shakespeare's own invention It is not probable that Norfolk was ignorant of French and Latin, as he had been sent on an embassy to France and Germany" (Cl Pr Edd)

163 **cunning** **instrument**, instrument cunningly, i.e skilfully,

164 being open, when taken out of its case his hands, the hands of him, for *his*, *he*, etc., as the antecedent of a relative, see Abb § 218

165 That knows harmony, not taught so to touch it as to call forth the harmony in it

167 doubly portcullis'd, barred up as by a double portcullis, which is a sliding door of cross timbers or ironwork let down to protect a gateway

168 unfeeling insensible to wrong

170 to fawn upon a nurse, i.e. with the object of being taught a new language

172, 3 What is breath? Your sentence, therefore, which robs me of the privilege of breathing my native air, condemns me to a silence which is but death in life

174 It boots thee not, it does you no good, see note on 1 1
164 compassionate, passionately sorrowful for yourself bewailing your fate in these passionate terms, the only instance in Shakespeare of the word used in this sense

178 take an oath with thee, pledge yourself by an oath which will be binding upon you when away

179 Lay hands the hilt of the sword in former days, forming with the blade a cross, was used to swear upon, cp *W T* II 3 168, "Swear by this sword", 1 *H IV* II 4 229, "Swear, by these hilts, or I am a villain else"

181 Our part yourselves,—for as regards ourself, we, in banishing you, absolve you of the allegiance due to us Warburton points out that it is a question much debated among the writers upon the law of nations whether a banished man is still bound by allegiance to the state which sends him into exile

183 so help God ' with the help of truth and God

185 Nor never, the double negative adding emphasis

186 regreet, mutually greet

187 This louring hate, this heavily frowning tempest of your hatred first brewed in your native land

188 advised, deliberate, very frequent in Shakespeare, e.g. *K J* IV 2 214, "More upon humour than *advised* respect" We still use the adverb 'advisedly' in the same sense

189 complot, plot together, though here meaning little more than 'plot' The Cl Pr Edd remark that "this almost tautological language is used, as in legal documents, to include every form of conspiracy in the oath"

193 so far as to mine enemy—so far as I can bring myself to speak to an enemy, I say, etc

194 permitted us, allowed the combat to proceed

195 had wander d, would have been wandering

196 Banish'd flesh, driven from this body which is as a sepulchre to the soul, cp *M P v* 1 63 5, "Such harmony is in immortal souls, But while this muddy vesture of decay Doth grossly close it in we can not hear it", and below, *iii* 2 167, "As if this flesh which walls about our life"

198 fly, subjunctive

199 along, "O E *and lang*, from *and* against, facing, in a direction opposite + *lang*, long At first an adjective 'extending away in the opposite direction, far stretching, extended, continuous,' then used with genitive case as 'the lengthened or continuous extent of,' 'the whole length of,' 'the long way off,' or *absolutely*, 'the long way,' 'lengthwise'" (Murray, *Eng Dict*)

200 The clogging soul, this burthen of conscious guilt which will hinder all peace of mind

202 My name be blotted, may my name be obliterated, the book of life, the heavenly record of those who have merited happiness hereafter

205 all, used adverbially shall rue, will have cause to regret when he discovers what you really are

206, 7 Now way I cannot go wrong wherever I may wander, for except to return to England, all the world is open to me

208, 9 even heart, the grief of your heart is reflected even in your sad eyes aspect, accented on the latter syllable

211 spent, being spent

214 wanton, luxuriant, gay with blossoming trees and flowers

216 in regard of me, out of consideration to me

220 bring their times about, complete their revolutions

222 extinct, extinguished, quenched, used only here in *Hamlet* 3 118, "these blazes *extinct* in both" In *Oth* ii 1 81, we have the form "extincted" in a metaphorical sense, "Give renew'd fire to our *extincted* spirits."

223 inch, small remaining portion

224. Blindfold death, death which closes the eyes of all

227 sullen sorrow, morose sorrow; the effect produced by sorrow being ascribed to the sorrow itself, sullen, "originally

229 to furrow age, to plough deep wrinkles of age in my brow

230 his pilgrimage, the weary progress of time

231 Thy word death, your word will be accepted by him as authority for shortening my life, : e you can command my death if you so please, cp 1 *H IV* 1 3 68, "let not his report Come *current* for an accusation Betwixt my love and your high majesty A figure from coinage which *runs* in the king's name In 11 *H IV* 11 1 132, the Chief Justice plays upon the word in connection with sterling, "Pay her the debt you owe her, and unpay the villany you have done her the one you may do with *sterling* money, and the other with *current* repentance

233 upon good advice, upon mature deliberation, *M. M* 1 469, "I thought it was a fault, but knew it not, Yet did repent me after more *advice*", *T G* 11 4 207, "How shall I dote on her with more *advice* That thus without *advice* begin to love her "

234 Whereto gave, to which, as a party to the deliberation, you gave your assent

235 to lour, to frown, to be angry at

237 You urged me as a judge, you called upon me to give my opinion in the character of a judge, : e one bound to exclude all personal considerations had rather, should have preferred

240 To smooth mild, in order to extenuate his guilt, my opinion would have been expressed in terms less severe

241 A partial avoid, I wished to escape being falsely charged with partiality; partial, used proleptically, cp *Macb* 11 4 76, "Ere human statutes purged the gentle weal," : e so that it became gentle, *Tis* 11 3 109, "when Jove Will o'er some high-viced city hang his poison In the sick air," : e the air which will thus become sick, and below, 11 4 66, "Which waste of idle hours hath quite thrown down," : e hours which have become idle by the waste of them.

242 the sentence, the verdict which I gave

243, 4 I look'd away, I hoped to hear some of you say that I was too strict in thus condemning my own son

245 gave leave, did nothing to hinder my tongue from, etc

247 bid him so, : e farewell.

249 what presence know, what we by having you with us cannot ascertain, : e how he is faring

252 As far me, to the farthest point on land, : e the port from which he is to embark

254 That thou friends, as is shown by your saying nothing

255 7 I have heart My reason is that, at a time when the tongue should be lavish in the expression of the grief overwhelming my heart, no words, however many, would be enough for my farewells to you

258 Thy grief, the grief which you have to endure, *i.e.* as contrasted with that which I have to endure Gaunt means that his son's grief is a thing which will last only a short portion of his life, whereas his own grief, since he cannot expect to see his son again, is one which will last the whole remainder of his life

263, 4 My heart pilgrimage My heart, which regards my travels as a compulsory pilgrimage, will sigh when my tongue calls it travelling for pleasure, *i.e.* if my tongue could be brought to call my travels travelling for pleasure, it would be rebuked for falsehood by my heart, which regards such travelling as a compulsory pilgrimage In unforced, there is a contrast with the pilgrimages voluntarily undertaken to the Holy Land or to the shrine of some saint

265 The sullen home return All you need do is to regard your weary pilgrimage as something which will make your return home the more delightful by way of contrast, foil, *Lat folium*, a leaf, is gold or silver leaf placed at the back of a gem, in a ring, etc., to make its lustre all the more conspicuous, *cp Hamlet v 2 266*, "I'll be your foil, Laertes, in mine ignorance Your skill shall, like a star i' the darkest night, Stick fiery off indeed"

269 remember me, remind me, as very frequently in Shakespeare what a deal of world, what a vast distance

270 jewels, those whom I hold dear, *cp Lear, i 1 271*, "The jewels of our father, with wash'd eyes, Cordelia leaves you," said of Regan and Goneril whom Lear held so dear

271-4 Must I not grief? My travel in foreign countries will be but as a tedious apprenticeship, at the end of which, when I obtain my freedom, all that I shall be able to boast will be that I have served my time to grief A 'journeyman apprentice' is one who, in order to learn some trade, is bound for a certain term of years to a master in that trade, from whom at the end of that term, if he has served with diligence, he obtains his freedom, *i.e.* is qualified to set up in the trade, journeyman, from *F journée*, a day, is properly one who is hired by the day

275 the eye of heaven, the sun, so, in *M N D* iii 2 188, the stars are called (with a pun) "fiery oes and eyes of light"

277. thy necessity, yourself in these compulsory circumstances

279, 80. Think not king. *Cp* Coriolanus's speech to the

SCENE III]

281 Where it borne, in the case of those who shrink beneath it

282 to purchase, to acquire, from () *F purchaser*, later *purchaser*, 'eagerly to pursue, purchase, procure,' Cot" (Skeat, *Ety Dict*), cp *R III* ii 1 63 'I entreat true peace of you, Which I will *purchase* with my duteous service"

286 Look, it, for the redundant pronoun, see Abb § 243, and for what, § 252

287 To lie go st, is to be found in the direction in which you are going

289 the presence strew'd, the presence chamber of the king strewed with rushes Before the days of carpets, rooms were strewed with rushes, and to this Shakespeare makes frequent reference, e.g. *Cymb* ii 2 13, "Our Tarquin thus Did softly press the *rushes* ere he waken'd The chastity he wounded", *R J* i 4 36, 'let wantons light of heart Tickle the senseless *rushes* with their heels' For *presence*, cp *H VIII* iii 1 17, "The two great cardinals Wait in the *presence*"

291 measure, a stately kind of dance with measured steps, cp *W A* ii 1 80, where it is described as 'full of state and ancientry"

292 gnarling, snarling, growling, cp ii *H VI* iii 1 192, 'And wolves are *gnarling* who should gnaw the first' The word is imitative of sound

293 sets it light, treats it with contempt

294 who can, i.e. no one can, a question of appeal fire, metrically a dissyllable

296 cloy, satisfy to repletion, glut

297 By bare feast' by merely fancying that he is enjoying a feast'

298 wallow, roll oneself about, especially in mire, mud

299 fantastic, existing only in imagination.

300 apprehension, conception

302, 3 Fall sorrow sore Sorrow's cruel tooth never causes the wound to fester so badly as when it bites but does not lance the sore, i.e. does not relieve the inflammation as a lancet does when it pierces the afflicted part, Rolingbroke means that there are some sorrows which, when at their keenest anguish, relieve themselves, but that his sorrow is not of that kind.

304 bring, conduct, escort, cp *H V* ii 3 2, "let me *bring* thee to Staines"

305 I would not stay, i.e. behind in England

307 that bears me yet' on whose bosom I still rest

308 true-born and therefore loyal to my country

SCENE IV

1 We did observe, said to Bagot and Green with reference to the manner in which Bolingbroke when leaving had paid court to the populace See ll 23, 24, below

2 high, noble

4 next highway, nearest road

5 what store, what abundance, cp *T S* iii 2 188, "great store of wedding cheer"

6 none for me, none so far as I was concerned except, unless perchance, for the thought, cp *Macb* i 7 24, 5, "And pity Shall blow the horrid deed in every eye, That tears shall drown the wind"

8 Awaked rheum, stirred up the inclination to weep, which of itself did not show any signs of activity

9 Did grace tear, lent to our parting, which had nothing in it of real warmth, the appearance of being heart-felt

12 for, because

13 That, the fact of my tongue disdaining, etc

15, 6 To counterfeit grave To make it appear that I was so overwhelmed by grief that the words of farewell, which I should otherwise have uttered, were swallowed up by emotion

18 He should have had, I would willingly have given him, Aumerle, etc

20 'tis doubt, it is doubtful

22 Whether friends Whether, kinsman though he be to us, his object when he returns home will be to see his friends, or for some much more questionable purpose, i.e. that of trying to get possession of the crown, for other instances of the subjunctive used indefinitely after the relative, see Abb § 367

24 Observed people, cp Casca's account of the way in which Caesar courted the common people, *J C* i 2 271 *et seqq*

27 did throw away, lavished it upon those who were utterly unworthy of it

28 with the craft of smiles, with smiling looks cunningly assumed in order to win their hearts, craft, for the sake of the word craftamen

29 underbearing, endurance, cp *K J* iii 1 65, "And leave those woes alone which I alone Am bound to *underbear*", the only other passage in which Shakespeare uses the word in this sense

30. As 'twere him, as though he would carry their affections

affects exactly in this sense for in *L L L* i 1 152, "For every man with his *affect* is born 'the word means rather inclination,' tendency," and in *Oth* i 3 264, "the young *affect* = the desires of youth

31 Off goes oyster wench, with haste he doffs his cap to a common fish wife, bonnet, used nowadays only of the head gear of women and the caps worn by Highlanders

33 And had knee, and he returns then salutation with a low bow "To illustrate this phrase," says Stevens "it should be remembered that *courtesying* (the act of reverence now confined to women) was anciently practised by men

35, 6 As were hope As though he was next in reversion for possession of the crown, and on him next after us, our subjects were to fix their hopes, *reversion* a legal term for the reverting of property to the original owner at the expiration of a term of years for which it had been leased, or on the death of the lessee

37 go these thoughts, let these thoughts go, let them be banished from our minds, as he is banished from this country

38 stand out, are still in rebellion, cp *K J* v 2 71, "his spirit is come in That so *stood out* against the holy church"

39 Expedient made, prompt measures must be taken to crush them, for expedient cp ii *H W* iii. 1 288, "A breach that craves a quick *expedient* stop for manage, *K J* i 1 37 "Which now the *manage* of two kingdoms must With fearful bloody issue arbitrate, and see below iii 3 179

40, 1 Ere further loss Before that by being left undisturbed, they avail themselves of the opportunity of strengthening themselves and weakening your power in the country

43 for our coffers, because our treasures too great a court, too lavish an expenditure in keeping up our state

44 largess, general bounty

45 to farm, to let out on lease, by allowing the revenues to be collected in return for a certain sum of money paid in advance So, taxes were farmed out to the 'publicani' of the Roman empire Holinshed says the realm was farmed out to Sir William Scroope, Sir John Bushy, Sir William Bagot, and Sir Henry Green

47 in hand occupying our attention, cp *K J* iv 3, 158, "A thousand businesses are brief *in hand*," i.e. require to be speedily despatched

48 Our substitutes, those in whom we have vested the government of the country during our absence from it blank charters

sory 'benevolences' were to be exacted, and the amounts of the contributions, were left to be filled in by the substitutes

50 **subscribe them**, enter their names

52 **presently**, at once, without delay

54 **grievous**, grievously, dangerously

55 **suddenly taken**, attacked by a sudden disease **post haste**, with the speed of a post, or messenger, very hastily, cp in *H VI* ii 1 139, "In haste, *post haste*, are come to join with you", to 'post' was to travel with great speed, a 'post,' a carrier, speedy messenger

58 **Ely House** "The Bishop of Ely's palace in Holborn, the site of which is still marked by 'Ely Place'" (Cl Pr Edd)

59 **in, into**, as frequently in Shakespeare

60 **To help him to**, to assist him in going to

61 **The lining**, that with which his coffers are lined, stuffed, sc the money, with a pun on coats

64 **Pray God late** let us pray God that, quickly as we may go, we may find him dead when we arrive

ACT II SCENE I

1, 2 **Will the king youth** Will the king arrive in time for me to spend my last breath in giving salutary advice to his rash and reckless youth? Gaunt is not asking a question to which he expects an answer, but expressing an impatient hope that the king may come in time, etc

3 **nor strive breath**, nor waste your breath in attempting a useless task, the emphatic double negative

4 **all, wholly**, adverb

5 **They say, men say**, it is commonly said

6 **Enforce, compel, deep harmony**, the solemn strains of some instrument to which it is impossible not to attend

8 **For they pain** For men recognize that there must be truth in words which those who utter them do so with much difficulty, i.e. which, if they were not true, would not be uttered, when to do so gives the speaker so much pain

9 **He that more**, he, whose speaking is so soon to be interrupted by the approach of death, is listened to with greater attention; for the omission of the preposition after *listen'd*, see Abb. § 199.

10. **to come to use flattering speech** from the substantive

12 the close, the "dying fall" of *T N* i 1 4 Cp *H V* i 2 182, "Congreering in a full and natural *close* Like music", Bacon, *Adv. of Learning*, ii v 3 33, Wright's ed., "Is not the trope of music, to avoid or slide from the *close* or cadence, common with the trope of rhetoric of deceiving expectation", Milton, *Ode on the Morning of Christ's Nativity*, l 100, "With thousand echoes still prolongs each heavenly *close*"

13 is sweetest last, longest retains its pleasing effect

14 Writ, the form usual in Shakespeare, the Elizabethan authors, owing to the tendency to drop the inflection *en*, frequently using the curtailed form of participles

15 my life's counsel, the advice I have so often proffered in my life time

16 undeaf, cause to listen, to deaf is used in *L L L* v 2 874, *K J* ii 1 147 For the conversion of nouns and adjectives into transitive verbs, see Abb § 290, and cp *Sonn* v 4, "Time will *unfair* that fairly doth excel"

17 other flattering sounds, other sounds and those flattering ones

18 of his state, found The reading in the text is that of the folios and later quartos, the Cambridge editors adopt Collier's conjecture 'of whose taste the wise are *fond*,' which is the reading of the first quarto with "*fond*" for "found" Delius reads "praises of his state, then there are *fond*," etc

19 Lascivious metres, ballads of a dangerously seductive sound to the ear venom, poisonous, pernicious, used again as an adjective in *R III* i 3 291, "His *venom* tooth", *C E* v 1 69, "The *venom* clamours of a jealous woman", iii *H VI* ii 2 138, "as *venom* toads"

20 open, readily giving admission

21 proud, i.e. of its fine fashions

22, 3 Whose manners imitation. Whose manners our nation, having no originality of its own, clumsily mimics when they have there become stale, cp *J C* iv 1 36 9, "one that feeds On objects, orts and imitations, Which, out of use and staled by other men, Begin his fashion", and *M V* i 2 79 82, 'How oddly he is suited' I think he bought his doublet in Italy, his round hose in France, his bonnet in Germany, and his behaviour every where" "Our author," remarks Johnson, 'who gives to all nations the customs of England, and to all ages the manners of his own, has charged the times of Richard with a folly not perhaps known then, but very frequent in Shakespeare's time, and much lamented by the wisest and best of our ancestors'

24-6 Where ears' Nowhere in the world does any vanity

it is—but a rumour of it quickly finds its way to his ears, cp
 III *H IV* v 6 86, 'I will *bring* abroad such prophecies'

27 Then, seeing that this is so all, used adverbially

28 Where regard In a case, like his, in which an obstinate
 will quarrels with that which wisdom holds in estimation, for
 mutiny, cp *A C* III 11 13, for regard, cp *J C* III 1 224,
 "Our reasons are so full of good *regard*'

29 Direct choose, do not attempt to guide him who is cer-
 tain to go his own way, we no longer use *himself* (which is
 properly the old dative) as a nominative without the personal
 pronoun 'he'

30 lose, spend in vain in talking to him

31 Methinks, impersonal verbs were more common in early
 English than in Elizabethan English, and more common in Eliza-
 bethan than in modern English new, newly

32 expiring, for sake of the antithesis with "inspired" fore-
 tell of him, prophesy in respect of him Cp 1 *H IV* v 4 83,
 and Campbell's *Lochiel*, 'Tis the sunset of life gives me mystical
 lore, And coming events cast their shadows before"

33 His rash riot, his dissoluteness which now burns with
 so violent and fierce a flame

35 Small, light 36 betimes, quickly, literally, 'by times'

37 With eager feeding, when it is swallowed too fast

38 Cormorant, literally, a sea bird with a voracious appetite,
 from Lat *corvus marinus*, a sea crow

39 Consuming means, having eaten up the substance at its
 command

40 this scepter'd isle, this island hitherto ruled by kings
 worthy of the title

41 This earth of majesty, this country so majestic in its
 grandeur this seat of Mars, this land so worthy to be the
 home of the god of war, its inhabitants being of so valorous a
 nature.

42 other, second, demi paradise, almost a Paradise, cp *A*
C 1 5 23, "The *demi Atlas* of this earth," said of Antony

43, 4 This fortress war, this fortress which Nature has
 built as a protection for herself against pollution and invasion,
 it seems hardly necessary to take infection in its ordinary sense
 of infectious disease

46 set, as a precious stone is 'set' in a ring, etc

47 in the office, in the way of, performing the office of, etc

49 envy, malice hatred, a meaning very frequent in Shakespeare for the double comparative, see Abb § 11

50 this earth seems a weak expression and the line is omitted in *England's Parnassus*, 1600, where the rest of the passage is quoted

52 Fear'd breed feared in consequence of the stock to which they belong and which had so often shown itself terrible

54 For Christian service, for service in the cause of Christ, as in the crusades for possession of the Holy Land. The line is parenthetical

55 stubborn Jewry Judæa the country of the Jews who obstinately refused to acknowledge the divinity of Christ

56 Of the world's ransom, of Him who by His sacrifice of atonement ransomed the world from the doom otherwise awaiting it

58 for, by reason of

59 leased out, see note on 1.3.35 I die pronouncing it I save this on my death bed, but also perhaps with the additional meaning that it almost kills him to utter such words

60 a tenement, a (small) holding *petting*, paltry, cp *M N D* 1.1.91 "Have every *petting* river made so proud", and of persons *M M* 1.2.112, "every *petting*, petty officer

62, 3 Whose rocky Neptune Cp *Cymb* 3.1.18-20, "your isle, which stands As Neptune's park, ribbed and paled in With rocks unscaleable and roaring waters"

64 inky blots, "a contemptuous term for writings" (Boswell), sc the leases by which the realm was farmed out rotten, which have no strength in them

66 Hath made itself Has now of its own act (i.e. through the instrumentality of its king) become enslaved

67 scandal, shame, literally, a snare, then offence, stumbling block

68 ensuing, about to happen, cp *R III* 1.3.43, "men's minds mistrust *ensuing* dangers"

STAGE DIRECTION Bushy, "Sir John Bushy was Speaker of the House of Commons in 1394, and, with Sir Henry Green, was one of the six commoners appointed to act with twelve peers, as Commissioners in 1398, invested with the whole powers of the Lords and Commons" (French, *Shakespeareana Genealogica*) Green, "Sir Henry Green appears to be the second son of Sir Henry Green, Justice of the King's Bench, 23 Edward III"

1b Bagot, "Sir William Bagot was Sheriff co. Leicester, 6 and 7 Richard II. He escaped from Bristol Castle, and joined the

to the Tower, whence he was released November 12, 1400, and being received into favour served again in Parliament. He died in 1407." *ib* Ros, "William de Ros, who succeeded his brother as seventh Lord Ros, of Hamlake. He was summoned to Parliament from 1394 to 1413. Henry rewarded his services by appointing him Lord Treasurer of England, and a K G. He stood very high in that monarch's favour, and died at Belvoir in 1414." *ib* Willoughby, "William de Willoughby, fifth baron Willoughby de Eresby, summoned to Parliament from 20 Richard II to 11 Henry IV, in which year, 1409, he died." *ib*

70 **raged**, exasperated. The word has been suspected and various conjectures offered, but from the constant antitheses of this play, it seems likely that the text is genuine.

72 **What comfort, man?** What cheer? *i.e.* I trust you are not so ill as I have been told, **man**, used in a friendly way.

73 **my composition**, my constitution, the condition of my body as it now is.

74 **in being old**, owing to my age. For the pun, cp II *H IV* III 2 349.

75 **hath kept fast**, has instituted a fast, by its continuous presence has compelled me to fast from that which would have nourished me.

76 **For sleeping watch'd**, for England, which so long has suffered itself to indulge in a dangerous sleep, I have kept watch.

77 **all**, wholly.

78, 9 **The pleasure fast**, from that pleasure in which other fathers find such healthful food, I have been obliged to abstain altogether.

81 **And therein gaunt**. And I, thanks to you, fasting in this way, have by you been made gaunt.

82 **Gaunt grave**, in being so gaunt I am well fitted for the grave, and hollow are my cheeks as a grave.

83 **inherit**, has possession of, cp *Temp* IV 1 154, "The great globe itself, Yea, all which it *inherit*."

84 **so nicely**, in such fanciful terms, cp *T N* III 1 17, "They that dally *nicely* with words may quickly make them wanton."

85 **makes sport to mock itself**, amuses itself by self derision.

86 **Since thou me**, since you seek to put an end to my name, to make me the last possessor of my name, by leaving no one to inherit it.

90 Thou me You say that you, whom I see to be dying, flatter me, then how can it be true that "men flatter those who die"?

91 Thou diest, it is as I said, answers Gaunt for it is you who are really dying the sicker, i.e. of us two

94 Ill in myself ill This jingle is difficult, perhaps it means, Ill in myself who see you, and seeing ill in you Delius explains, 'I am ill in myself to look upon and therein ill that I see you ill,' which seems against the order of the words Stevens would eject to see as destroying the metre and not improving the sense

95, 6 Thy death bed sick, your death-bed is the whole realm of England, throughout the length and breadth of which you are sick in the matter of reputation, thy is emphatic as in contrast with Gaunt's own death bed

98 thy anointed body, see note on 1 2 38

99 Of those thee of those who, pretending to seek your well being, are the very persons who have injured you

102, 3 And yet land, and yet, though enclosed in so small a limit as the compass of your crown, that which suffers waste is nothing less than the whole realm over which you rule "'Waste' is a law term for destruction of houses, wood, or other produce of land, done by the tenant to the prejudice of the freehold" (Cl Pr Edd)

104 thy grandsire, Edward the Third, Richard being the son of the Black Prince

105 seen how sons, seen how you were fated to ruin your descendants by wasting their inheritance

106 From forth shame, he would have removed from beyond your reach that which has proved your disgrace, &c the government of England which you have so abused.

108 Which art thyself, who have come into possession only to depose yourself, with a pun on possess'd in the sense of being subject to an evil spirit, which = for you

109 regent of the world, i.e. not merely regent of England

111 for the world, as the whole of the dominion which you can call your own

112 Landlord king, by leasing out your realm in the way you have done, you have put yourself in the position of a landlord, and no longer occupy that of a king

114 Thy state law, the position you legally (of law, i.e. by law) hold is now subject, as a landlord's would be, to the

116 an ague's privilege, that of causing one to shiver and grow pale

119 his residence, *sc* the face, his = its, see Abb § 228

120 by my seat's majesty, I swear by the majesty of the throne which I occupy

121 great Edward's son, Edward, Prince of Wales, the Black Prince, father of Richard II. He was born 1330, and died July 8, 1376

122 roundly, freely, unceremoniously, *cp* *T S* i 2 59, "shall I then come *roundly* to thee And wish thee to a shrewd ill favour'd wife?" On "clear and *round* dealing," Bacon, *Essay of Truth*, Abbott remarks, "*Round* was naturally used of that which was symmetrical and *complete* (as a circle is) then of any thing *thorough*. Hence (paradoxically enough), 'I went *round* to work,' *Hamlet* ii 2 139, means, 'I went *straight* to the point'

123 Should run shoulders, should speedily cause you to lose your head

125 For that, merely because

126 the pelican from feeding its young with fish from its pouch was supposed to allow its offspring to drink its own blood, *cp* *Hamlet* iv 5 146, "And like the kind life rendering *pelican* Repast them with my blood", *Lear*, iii 4 77, "Those *pelican* daughters," *i.e.* that drained the blood of their own parent

129 whom fair befall, whom I trust happiness may await, *cp* *Lear* i 1 175, "Hail fall the bones that took the pains for me!"

130 precedent, example *cp* *Lear*, ii 3 13, "The country gives me proof and *precedent* Of Bedlam beggars"

131 respect'st not do not feel any scruple about

132 Join with, combine with in shortening my life

133 And thy, and let thy, etc crooked, used with reference to the bent attitude of old men, and also with reference to the form of the sickle with which, as with a scythe, Time was sometimes represented

135 but die thee! let shame always live with you!

137 Love they have, let those who are loved and honoured be anxious to live, I am neither loved nor honoured, and therefore I am anxious to die

138 that age have, who are possessed by old age and a morose nature, sullen, fits of sullen temper

139 become, are suitable to

SCENE I]

away, perverse It is a parallel formation to *froward*" (Skeat, *Lit. Dict.*)

143 on my life, I stake my life on the truth of what I say

144 As Harry Hereford, used by York as an accusative (as dear as he holds his own son), but purposely misunderstood by the king, who takes the words as a nominative

145 as Hereford's his, one is as true as the other, i.e. both are equally false

146 As theirs is My love to them shall be as theirs is to me, and let every thing be as it is

147 commends him, sends you his salutation

150 hath spent has exhausted

151 Be York so ' may I be the next to become bankrupt of ' words, life, and all " ' "

154 our pilgrimage must be, I have still to make the weary journey of life

155 So much for that, enough of that subject

156 supplant, extirpate literally, to put something under the sole (Lat. *planta*) of the foot, to trip up the heels, overthrow, rug headed kerns, cp. in *H. VI.* iii. 1. 367, "a shag hair'd kern", 'rug, a coarse woollen covering, a mat, is cognate with rough, so we speak of 'matted hair', kerns were the light armed foot-soldiery of Ireland and the Western isles, the word is probably from the Irish *cearn*, a man Cp. *Macb.* i. 2. 13, "Of kerns and gallowglasses is supplied"

157, 8 Which live An allusion to the tradition that St. Patrick freed Ireland from venomous reptiles, But only they, but they alone the plural is probably due to the word venom being regarded as = venomous creatures

159 And for charge, and since affairs of so great magnitude demand a large expenditure of money, charge, in this sense, is very frequent in Shakespeare

160 Towards us, to help us in their settlement, we confiscate to our use

164 tender duty, compunctious feelings of duty to my sovereign

165 Not nor, neither nor England's private wrongs, " wrongs committed against private men, against quiet citizens " (Schmidt)

167, 8 Nor the prevention marriage, a marriage which, on the death of his first wife, he while in exile wished to make with the daughter of the Duke de Berri, but which was put a stop to by Richard's influence

169 Have ever face, have ever been able to exhaust my

170 bend one wrinkle, so much as once to frown

173 *raged, i.e. who raged*, for the omission of the relative, see Abb § 244, and for the omission of the indefinite article before *lion*, § 84

177 Accomplish'd hours, when of your age, cp *M F* iii 4 61 'That they shall think we are *accomplished* *with* what we lack'

182 guilty blood, were not guilty of shedding the blood of any of his kindred, as your hands are

183 But bloody kin, but covered with the blood in which he avenged himself upon those who were enemies to his race

184 too far grief, too completely overwhelmed with grief

185 compare between, make a comparison between you and your ancestors

187, 8 if not withal, if you do not please to pardon me, I am glad not to be pardoned, am satisfied with the result, *withal*, when used as a preposition is in Shakespeare always at the end of the sentence

189 gripe into your hands, seize and greedily close your hands upon, cp *H IV* i 1 57, "To *gripe* the general sway *into* your hands"

190 royalties, the dignities to which, by belonging to the royal family, he is entitled, cp *K J* ii 1 176, "The dominations, *royalties*, and rights Of this oppressed boy," sc Prince Arthur

195, 6 Take rights, if you rob Hereford of his rightful dues, you may as well rob Time of his recorded and customary privileges

197 Let not to-day, you may as well forbid to-morrow to follow to-day, *i.e.* upset all order of time, for ensue, as a transitive verb, cp *Lucr* 502, "I know repentant tears *ensue* the deed."

199 But by succession? Except by your having come to the throne in rightful order of succession?

202-4 Call in living, if you stop the issue of those documents in virtue of which he, through his agents, is entitled to claim delivery of his possessions letters patents, official documents, conferring a privilege, which are open to the inspection of all men, see Abb § 338, attorneys general, agents appointed with general authority to represent a person in all his affairs and suits, as contrasted with those appointed for a special purpose only, to sue his livery, on the death of any person who held by knight's service his heir, if under age, became a ward of the

'the king's hand might be taken off' and the land be delivered to him

204 deny his offer d homage refuse to accept from him that homage which he is prepared to offer for the holding of his land In the tenure by knight's service, the tenant of an estate of inheritance was bound to do homage to his lord kneeling to him, professing to become his man, and receiving from him a kiss

206 lose, estrange from you

207 my tender patience, my patience which has so long shown itself loving towards you

208 Which honour think, which cannot enter the mind of one who is honourably loyal

210 plate, gold and silver articles of household furniture, dishes, plates, etc

211 I'll not while, I will not be present during the time you do it

213, 4 But by good But this at all events may be inferred of bad courses that their issue will never be good, cp *L L L* iv 3 150, 'I would not have him know so much *by* me,' : *e* regarding me, *M A v* 1 312, "In anything that I do know *by* her"

215 straight, straightway Earl of Wiltshire "Sir William Scrope [elder brother of Sir Stephen Scroop or Scrope, who appears on the scene in iii 2], created Earl of Wiltshire September 29, 1397 He was beheaded in 1399 and his honours forfeited" (Cl Pr Edd)

216 repair, come, in this sense from Lat *repatriare*, to return to one's country

217 To see this business, to see to, attend to, this business, *A C v* 2 368, "Come, Dolabella, see High order in this great solemnity" To-morrow next on the morning next to this, 'to-morrow' literally means 'for the morning,' : *e* any morning, just as 'to-night' means 'for the night,' and is used by Shakespeare for present, past, and future time though with us the phrase is confined to the present night

219 We will for, I purpose to go trow, think, am sure

221 just, to be relied upon

222 Come on our queen, for this vocative, cp *W T* i 2 27, "Tongue-tied our queen, speak thou"

223 our time of stay, the time that I can remain with you

226 Barely revenue, he enjoys the bare title of Duke, but without the revenue which properly goes with it

229 with a liberal tongue, by freedom of speech

231 That speak harm ' who repeats your words with the intention of bringing you into trouble

232 Tends Hereford? Have the words you would speak reference to Hereford?

233 out with it boldly, speak out boldly what you have to say

235 No good him I have nothing to say of any good which it is in my power to do him

237 gelded of his patrimony, robbed of that inheritance from his father which is really his

238, 9 'tis shame him, it is disgraceful that one like him should have to endure such wrongs moe, or 'mo,' was formerly used of number, 'more,' of size

240 declining land, land which is fast going to ruin

241 is not himself does not allow himself to be guided by his natural instincts

242, 3 and what all, and whatever information they may, out of pure hatred, choose to lay against us

244 prosecute, follow up by action

246 pill'd, pillaged, plundered, cp *R III* 1 3 159, "In sharing that which you have pill'd from me" From "*F1 piller*, 'to pill ravage, ransack, rifle, rob', Cotgrave — *Lat pilare*, to plunder, pillage" (*Skeat, Etym Dict*)

247 And lost their hearts I have followed Steevens, Dyce, and Grant White in omitting 'quite' before lost, but the passage is unsatisfactory Grant White remarks that the emphatic force proper to a repetition is lost if 'quite' appear in this place

248 For ancient quarrels "Holinshed says 'That they had aided ye duke of Gloucester, the erles of Arundel and Warwick, when thei rose in armor against him'" (*Cl Pr Edd*)

250 As, such as blanks, blank charters, cp 1 3 48 bene volences, in reality forced loans, a system of exaction invented by Edward the Fourth in which men of property were asked "of their goodness" to contribute to the needs of the government They were abolished by Richard the Third, but again imposed by Henry the Seventh, and continued till the days of Charles the First and I wot not what, and a number of other devices, wot, know, the first and third persons of the present indicative of the verb to 'wit'

251 what of this ' how is all the money spent that is thus raised ' o' God's name, on or in, the name of God

253 But basely compromise, but he has basely entered into

which Richard made with Charles VI of France in the year 1393, and renewed in 1396 upon the marriage of Richard and Isabel' (Cl Pr Edd.)

254 achieved from 'O F *achieve*, *achieve*, to accomplish. Formed from the phrase *venir à chef* or *venir à bout* to come to the end or arrive at one's object — Lat *ad* about *venire*, to come to an end' (Skeat, *Etym. Dict.*)

256 hath the realm in farm, has had the realm made over to him to collect its revenues, see note on 1 3 45

257 broken, bankrupt

258 dissolution destruction *hangeth*, for the singular verb with a double nominative see Abb § 336

260 notwithstanding, in spite of, here a preposition

261 But, except

262 His noble kinsman, who is his kinsman, and one far too noble to be so

263, 4 we hear storm, though we hear the fearful tempest brewing, we take no steps to escape its violence when it comes down, cp *Temp* II 2 20, another storm brewing, I hear it *sing* 'the wind'

265 sit sore, bear heavily upon, for sit cp below, II 2 123, "The wind *sits* tall for news to go to Ireland"

266 And yet perish, and yet we do not take the trouble to strike our sails (i.e. take measures to avoid destruction), but in foolish over confidence allow ourselves to perish. For *securely* cp *T C* IV 5 73, "Tis done like Hector but *securely* done, A little proudly, and great deal misprizing The knight opposed," (i.e. undervaluing the champion opposed to him), *Mach* III 5 32, "And you all know, *security* Is mortal's chiefest enemy"

268, 9 And unavowed wreck And having so foolishly sat still while our ruin was preparing, we cannot now avoid the danger, for *unavowed*, = inevitable, see Abb § 475, and cp *R III* IV 4 217, All *unavoided* is the doom of destiny"

270 hollow eyes, empty sockets cp *M V* II 6 63, A carrion Death, within whose *empty* eye There is a written scroll'

271 peering, peeping forth, there seems here to be admixture of two verbs, to 'peer' = to look narrowly, and to 'peer' = to appear. care not say, i.e. for fear that they should not be ready to join with him in revolt

272 tidings, used by Shakespeare sometimes as a singular, sometimes as a plural, substantive. In its use as a singular it resembles 'news,' which is properly plural, being equivalent to the F *nouvelles*, new things

275, 6 We three thoughts, we three are but as one person, viz yourself, and thus being so, when you speak, your words are but spoken to yourself, are but as thoughts which pass through your mind

281 That late Exeter As the person who lately escaped from the house of the Duke of Exeter, and to whom alone of those mentioned the Archbishop was related, was the son of the Earl of Arundel, Malone supplies the lacuna here by the words "The son of Richard, Earl of Arundel"

282 late "Thomas Arundel, Archbishop of Canterbury, brother to the Earl of Arundel, who was beheaded in this reign, had been banished by the parliament, and was afterwards deprived by the Pope of his See at the request of the king, whence he is here called 'late of Canterbury'" (Steevens)

286 tall, stately and of great burthen, cp *Lear*, iv 6 18, "yond *tall* anchoring bark", *Oth* ii 1 79, "That he may bless this bay with his *tall* ship", men of war, fighting men, we now use the phrase only of ships of war

287 with all due expedience, with all the haste that they can safely make, cp *H V* iv 3 70, "And will with all *expedience* charge on us" In *1 H II* i 1 33, and *A C* i 2 185, the word is probably used in the same sense

288 to touch, to make their way to and land upon

289 they had, would have touched but that Ireland, but that they are waiting till the king shall first have set out

291 If then we shall shake off, if therefore we are to, ought to, shake off, for shall, in this sense, see Abb § 315

292 Imp out, i.e. we are to imp out, to 'imp,' from A S *impan*, to graft, was a technical term in hawking, and consisted in attaching to the broken feather an exact substitute for the piece lost. This was done by inserting one end of an iron needle into the pith of the broken feather, the other end of the needle being inserted into the pith of the feather to be substituted

293 Redeem crown, get back the crown, which has been stained by the act, from those to whom it has been sordidly pawned, i.e. recover England from the hands of those to whom it had been leased out, by repaying them the money which they had advanced; broking pawn, it having been pledged as goods are pledged to a pawn broker, one who deals by means of pawns, or pledges

294 our sceptre's gilt, the brightness that properly belongs to it, gilt is not used here for the gold wash laid on a surface

295 look like itself, wear its natural grandeur

on the Humber, but, like some other ports on the east coast of England, since swept away by the sea

297 faint do so, shrink, from fear of doing this

298 secret, close, not divulging what I have told you, cp *M A* 1 1 112, 'I can be *secret* as a dumb man'

299 urge, suggest, talk of

300 Hold out my horse, if my horse does not break down

SCENE II

1 too much sad, for 'much' used as an adverb with positive adjectives, see Abb § 51

3 life-harming, that is injurious to health

4 entertain, maintain, keep up, cp *M V* 1 1 90, "And do a wilful stillness *entertain*" disposition, mood, cp *A Y L* 1 1 113, "But come now I will be your Rosalind in a more coming-on *disposition*"

5, 6 To please do it, to please the king, I made the promise, but, if I am to please myself, I cannot lay aside my grief

8 Save bidding guest, except that I have had to bid farewell to, etc

9 again, on the other hand

10 ripe, i.e. for birth

11 inward, inmost, cp *K J* 1 1 227 "The conjunction of our *inward* souls"

12 With nothing trembles, trembles with some insubstantial terror, some terror to which I can give no shape

14 substance, reality

15 Which shows, each of which looks

16 glazed, covered over as with glass

17 Divides objects, breaks up one thing, entire in itself, into many separate objects, gives many facets to a single thing

18 perspectives, glasses cut in such a manner as to produce an optical delusion, when looked through, rightly, directly

19 confusion, an indistinct form awry, obliquely, properly an adverb, compounded of *on* and *wry*

20 Distinguish form, show forms distinctly

21 Looking departure, not looking at your lord's departure from that point of view from which it should be regarded

23 Which, sc grief as it is, as it really is

25 **More than** not, do not allow yourself to be grieved by anything besides, etc

27 **for**, in the place of

30 **I cannot** sad, I cannot help being sad **heavy**, used adverbially

31, 2 **As**, though **shrink**, As that,—although in thinking, I think upon nothing,—I cannot but faint and cower under a heavy nothing

33 'Tis nothing but conceit, your thought is nothing but a fanciful conception, conceit in its modern sense is the conception a man has of himself, and as that conception is often an unduly favourable one, the word has come to mean vanity

34 'Tis nothing less, it is anything but mere fanciful conception

34, 5 **conceit** grief, a conception of grief, however fanciful, is ever due to some grief which has preceded it

36 **For nothing** grief, for to some insubstantial origin my grief, which is real, is due

37 **Or something** grieve, or the insubstantial grief I feel belongs to something real Delius takes the nothing that I grieve as the subject, and something as the object

38 'Tis in reversion possess, I have no present possession of it, but am only heir to it in reversion, when it shall pass to me from that which now possesses it

41 **well met**, i.e. we are glad to see you

42 **is not yet shipp'd**, has not yet taken ship

43 'tis better he is, it is a better hope to hope he is

44 **For his** hope, for his designs are in urgent need of haste, his haste in urgent need of good hope

46 **That he** power, that he, who is our hope, might have led back his forces, 'retire' is used reflexively of retreating in *K J* v 3 13, "The French fight coldly and *retire themselves*" power, armed forces, as in l 124 below, in 2 63, and in the plural, v 3 140

48 **strongly**, with a powerful army at his back

49 **repeals himself**, recalls himself from banishment, cp iv 1 85 7, and *T G* v 4 143, "Know then, I here forget all former griefs, Cancel all grudge, *repeal* thee home again" We now use the word only of a law, edict

50 **uplifted arms**, arms lifted up in insurrection

52 **and that, and that**, which

55 **are fled to him**, have deserted the king's cause and gone

57 And all traitors? and all the rest who have revolted as being factious traitors. This seems to be the meaning if the text is genuine, but the majority of the copies read, 'And the rest of the,' etc., a reading adopted by many modern editors.

59 broke, on the dropping of the inflexion *en*, see Abb § 343 his staff the emblem of his office as Lord Steward of the king's household.

60 fled, *hale* fled, to be supplied from 'hath' in the previous line.

62, 3 So heir, so by your gloomy tidings you have proved the midwife to bring my woe to the birth, and Bolingbroke (as being the cause of those tidings) is the ill omened first born of my sorrow.

64 her prodigy, the portentous embryo with which she was pregnant. The line is explanatory of the previous one.

66 Have woe join'd, have, in the news you have given me, added a fresh sorrow to that already caused by my husband's departure.

68 I will despair, I am determined to give way to despair.

69 cozening, cheating, from "F *cousiner*, 'to claime kindred for advantage, or particular ends, as he, who to save charges in travelling, goes from house to house, as *cozin* to the honour of every one', Cotgrave. So in modern F, *cousiner* is 'to call cousin, to sponge, to live upon other people', Hamilton and Legros. The change of meaning from 'sponge' to 'beguile' or 'cheat' was easy" (Skeat, *Ety Dict*).

70 A parasite a trencher friend, a toady, from Gk *παράσιτος*, eating beside another at table. a keeper death, one who hinders the approach of a real friend, death.

71 dissolve, loosen for bands, see note on 1 1 2.

72 lingers in extremity, protracts to the very furthest limit, for the transitive use of lingers, cp *M N D* 1 1 4, "She lingers my desires."

74 signs of war, armour, here the gorget, or piece of armour to protect the throat (gorge), in *H 1* 1 2 192, for ensigns, flags.

75 careful, anxious.

79 crosses, disappointments.

80, 1 Your husband, home, while your husband has gone to Ireland to save his kingdom, by subduing the rebels, others come to rob him of what was safe at home, for the insertion of the pronoun after husband, see Abb § 243.

82 to underprop, to uphold, act as a prop to an edifice which

83 Now comes made, now is the hour at hand in which he will have to pay the penalty of his former excesses

84 Now shall him, now will he have to put to the test those who with homied words professed their friendship

86 Why, so ' well, so be it ' all, everything

87 the commons they are cold, Pope omits they are, and is followed by Dyce

88 revolt side, revolt and range themselves on, etc

90 Sirrah, sir, a term generally, but not always, used in a contemptuous or angry way, sometimes applied even to women

91 presently, at once

92 Hold, stop

94 as I came there, on my way past the place I stopped there for a time

95 to report, by reporting, for this indefinite use of the infinitive, see Abb § 356

96 knave? the older senses of the word are 'boy,' 'servant,' and so the word is frequently used by Shakespeare, from A S *cnafa*, a later form of *cnapa*, a boy

98 God for his mercy! an ellipsis, probably of 'I pray'

101 So my it, provided he had not been provoked to do so by any disloyalty of mine

102 my head, an emphasis on my

103 What, Ireland? have no tidings of his rebellion been sent to the king in Ireland? What, an exclamation of astonishment, Ireland, here metrically a trisyllable

104 How money, how shall we manage in regard to money? how shall we manage to procure money?

105 sister, "this is one of Shakespeare's touches of nature York is talking to the Queen his cousin, but the recent death of his sister is uppermost in his mind" (Steevens) The Duchess was his sister as being his brother's wife, I would say, I should wish to say

107 there, at Plashy

108 will you men? will you go and assemble what fighting men you can find?

109 If I know me, i.e. assuredly I do not know, to order, to arrange.

110 thrust, forcibly put into my hands disorderly, all in confusion.

112, 3 whom both defend, cp *Macb* 1.7.12-6 again, on

115 Whom right, to restore whom to his rights I am enjoined both by conscience and the ties of relationship

116, 7 I'll you, I will arrange for your safety

119 Berkeley, see note on III 2 1

120 I should too, I also ought to go to Plashy, i.e. to look after the affairs of the Duchess

122 at six and seven, in a state of confusion, the idea being that of an even number combined with an odd number, the modern idiom is 'at sixes and sevens' Delius compares Bacon regarding Pope Sixtus the Fifth, "a fierce thundering friar that would set all *at six and seven*, or at six and five, if you allude to his name"

123 sits fair, is in a favourable quarter, cp *H V* II 2 12, "Now *sits* the wind *fair*, and we will aboard" and above, II 1 265

124 to levy power, to raise forces, cp above, I 46

125 Proportionable, in any way equal

126 all impossible, wholly impossible, for *un* in composition, see Abb § 442

127, 8 our nearness king, the fact that we are so closely bound up with the king by love makes us much hated by those who are hostile to him

129 And that's commons and when you speak of those who are hostile to him you speak of the fickle common people, cp *M V* II 7 31, "As much as I deserve" *Why, that's the lady*"

131 By so much, in equal proportion

132 Wherein, in which matter, viz the emptying of their purses

133 If judgement we, if the matter rests with their decision, then we too must stand condemned

137 little office, small service

141 heart's presages, deeply seated presentiments

143 That's as York Bolingbroke, that will depend upon the measure of success which the Duke meets with in opposing Bolingbroke

146 Is numbering dry, is as futile as an attempt to count, etc

147 Where one fly, for every man that stands firm to his cause, a thousand will desert it

148 for once ever, for ever and a day, as we say.

SCENE III

5 Draws, "These wild hills and rough ways blend, as it were, into one idea in the speaker's mind, and he proceeds as if he had said 'journeying over these hills and ways,' etc" (Cl Pr Edd)

6 fair discourse, pleasant conversation

10 In, in the case of wanting your company, not having such pleasant companionship as yours

12 tediousness and process, tedious process a hendiadys

13, 14 But theirs possess, but their travel is made pleasant by the hope of having in the future that advantage which I possess in the present

15 to joy, to enjoy, of enjoying is little less in joy, is scarcely inferior in the matter of joy

16 by this, *sc* expectation

STAGE DIRECTION *Enter Henry Percy* Henry Percy, the "Hotspur" in *Henry IV*, was the eldest son of the Earl of Northumberland, born about A D 1366, and killed in the battle of Shrewsbury, July 21, 1403

22 whencesoever, from whatever place he comes (as to which I know nothing)

23 fares, the radical idea of to 'fare' is motion, progress, so *Par Lost*, iv 131, "So on he fares and to the border comes Of Eden", thence it came to mean the way in which a man gets on in the world, the sense it now bears We say 'he fared ill' or 'well,' *sc* was fortunate or the contrary, and we use the same expression to mean that his entertainment, that which was given him to eat and drink, was good or bad As a substantive, the word is used for the price paid for conveyance, as 'carriage fare', for condit^on, for food, and for a person carried The nearest approach to the original meaning is in impersonal phrases, such as 'it fares well with him', 'how fares it with the happy dead', which are similar to the phrases 'how goes it with him?' 'all went well with us'

24 I had thought to have learn'd, on the complete present infinitive, see Abb § 360

29 resolved, determined

33. by Berkeley, by way of Berkeley Castle

35 repair, see note on ii 1 216

42 raw, unripe, crude

43 elder days, my days as they grow older

44 To more desert, with the result of my service and desert being more fully proved approved tried, proved to be worthy, as in *M A n* 1 394, "of *approved* valour and confirmed honesty", and frequently elsewhere

46 happy, fortunate

47 As in friends, as in the fact that my soul ever gratefully remembers those who have shown themselves to be my loyal friends

48 ripens with thy love, improves simultaneously with the increase of your love keeps step with it in increasing

49 It shall recompense, it (my good fortune) shall ever endeavour to recompense you for your loyal love

50 thus seals it, said as he gives his hand in pledge of his sincerity

51, 2 what stir war? What preparations to oppose us has York made with the forces under him?

53 tuft, clump, small copse

55 Berkeley, Thomas Berkeley, fifth baron died in 1416 Seymour, "Richard de St Maur, fifth baron of that surname born 1355 died 1401" (Cl Pr Edd)

56 None else Δ estimate, none else of any renown and reputation as warriors

58 Bloody haste, besprinkled with blood from their horses' flanks, and all aglow with the haste they have made

59, 60 I wot traitor I guess that you, in your love, are in eager pursuit of one who has been proclaimed a banished traitor, pursues, with a double sense

60 2 all my recompense no other wealth have I at present than words of gratitude, the value of which has not yet been felt (i.e. in any substantial manner) by you, but that wealth, when it has become something of more intrinsic value than mere words, shall recompense your love and labour in my behalf, for the ellipsis of the inflection in love, see Abb § 397

65 Evermore poor, I can still but give you thanks, which are all the wealth of the poor

66, 7 Which bounty, and these thanks, until my fortune comes of age (and so inherits its property), must represent all the recompense I can make you

of Lancaster, my proper title now , to that of Hereford I make no answer

72 And I must tongue, and by that title must I be addressed by you

75 To raze out , to deprive you of a single title that be longs to you , for title, Capell proposed 'title'

76 what lord you will, by whatever title you choose to be addressed, whether Lord of Hereford or Lord of Lancaster

78 pricks, spurs

79 To take time, to take advantage of the time when the king is absent from his kingdom The Cl Pr Edd remark, "We have something like a parallel to the passage in *Oth* iii 4 174, 'Lover's absent hours,' i e the hours of lover's absence So the 'absent time' is the time of absence, and the idea of 'king' is suggested by the preceding 'regent' "

80 And fright arms, and terrify our domestic peace by a war which has its birth in the land itself, i e civil war, not war forced upon us by foreign invasion Schmidt reads 'self borne,' with the explanation 'borne for one's self (not for the king) ", and so Delius

81 I shall not you, it will not be necessary for me to give you any message to carry

84 Whose duty false, which makes a mere pretence of duty, deceivable, deceptive, see Abb § 445

86 Tut, tut! pooh, pooh! i e it is all nonsense your addressing me in this way when your acts are so much at variance with your words

87 Grace me uncle do not pretend respect and affection by addressing me with these titles, cp *R J* iii 5 153, "Thank me no thankings, nor proud me no prouds," said in answer to Juliet's "Not proud you have, but thankful that you have "

89 In an ungracious mouth, when uttered by one who has acted as ungraciously as you have acted profane, profaned, abused

90 forbidden legs, legs which were forbidden to walk this land

91 a dust, a single particle of dust, cp *K J* iii 4 128, "Shall blow each dust, each straw, each little rub, Out of the path "

92 more 'why?' there are more questions to be asked you

94 her pale-faced villages, made pale by dread of the struggle to ensue, pale-faced, used proleptically

sisting people" (Cl Pr Edd) Delius, and Schmidt doubtfully, take *despised* as hateful, but in this way the antithesis with ostentation is sacrificed

97 the king behind, though absent in his own person, the king is present in that of his substitute

99 the lord youth, possessed of that lusty youth, cp
1 *H IV* v 4 18, "I did not think thee *lord of such a spirit*"

100, 1 As when Prince, no such exploit as this is recorded in history that young men, he who in his youth was as the god of war among men

102 From forth, from out of

104 prisoner to the palsy, now robbed by the palsy of its freedom of use, cp *W T* ii 2 59, "*prisoner to the womb*", *chastise*, with the accent on the first syllable

107 On what wherein? On what footing does it stand (*i.e.* how do you make out that it is a fault?), and in what act has it shown itself? For *On*, Johnson proposed 'In,' which Dyce adopts. But *On* seems preferable with *stands*, and when, in reply, York says "in condition," he is referring rather to the latter clause of the question

109 detested, detestable, hateful, see Abb § 375

112 braving, defiant, cp *A W* i 2 3, "Have fought with equal fortune and continue *A braving war*"

113 As I Hereford, the sentence of banishment was passed upon me as Hereford

114 But as Lancaster But in returning, I return as Lancaster

116 indifferent, impartial, cp *H VIII* ii 4 17, "having here No judge *indifferent*"

120 A wandering vagabond, to be a wretch without house or home, royalties, see note on ii 1 190

121 perforce, forcibly

122 To upstart unthriffs, to reckless prodigals suddenly raised by the king to honour Wherefore was I born? *i.e.* if I am not to succeed to my hereditary rights, it was a pity I was ever born

123, 4 If that Lancaster, by the same title (that of birth) by which my cousin claims to be king of England, I claim to be Duke of Lancaster

126 Had you first died, before your brother Gannet

127 He should have found, he would have been certain to find.

The metaphor is that of rousing a stag from its lair and pursuing it to its death, bay, from "F *abows, abbows* Cotgrave says—"a stag is said *rendre les abbows* when, weary of running, he turns upon the hounds, and holds them at, or puts them to, a bay. The original sense of *aboi* is the bark of a dog" (Skeat, *Ety Dict*)

129 denied to sue, refused the right of suing, see note on II 1 203, 4

130 And yet leave, and yet, by letters patents issued to me, I received permission to do so

131 *distrain'd*, forcibly seized, as though for debt

132 *amiss*, wrongfully, the word in Shakespeare's day had a stronger meaning than at present, it stands for the M E *on misse*, in error

134 challenge law claim that the law be put in force attorneys, see note on II 1 203

135 personally, in my own person

136 To my descent, to that inheritance which by virtue of uninterrupted descent is justly mine,

137 *abused*, ill used

138 It stands right It is incumbent upon you to restore him to his rights Abbott (§ 204) shows that the full phrase is "it stands on, upon, to me, you, etc., and that while in *R III* iv 2 59, we have the correct form, "It stands *me* (dative) much *upon* (adverb) To stop all hopes," the phrase in the text is incorrect, upon being used as a preposition governing your grace

139 Base men great, low born men have been raised to high positions by his revenues being made over to them

141 I have had feeling of, I have not been insensible to, etc

143 in this kind, in this way braving, defiant, as in I 112

144 Be his own carver, carve out his own fortunes, cp *Ham* I 3 20, "He may not as unvalued persons do, *Carve* for himself " cut out his way, cut a path for himself out of his difficulties.

145 To find wrong, to get possession of his rights by wrongful action it may not be, such procedure cannot be allowed.

146 in this kind, in this way of acting

147 *Charish*, foster, give support to

149 But for his own, merely to get possession of what right fully belongs to him.

151 And let oath' and I trust that he who breaks that oath may never find happiness of his own

152 the issue of these arms, what will be the result of his thus taking up arms

153 mend it, set matters right

154 all ill left, in every way badly supported

156 attach you all, arrest you all as traitors. "The earlier English sense of 'arrest, seize,' arose in A F and Eng, as an elliptical expression for 'attach by some tie to the control or jurisdiction of a court,' i e so that it shall have a hold on the party" (Murray, *Eng Dict*)

157 sovereign, princely

159 as neuter, neutral

160 please, subjunctive

161 repose you, reflexively, see Abb § 296

163 win, persuade

165 complices, accomplices, conspirators

166 The caterpillars commonwealth, who feed upon and destroy the state as caterpillars feed upon and destroy the leaves of plants, caterpillar, "the M E *caterpillar* is a corruption of O F *chattepeleuse*. A fanciful name, meaning literally 'hairy she cat'" (Skeat, *Ety Dict*)

167 to weed, to pluck up, as weeds are plucked up

170 Nor friends are, "neither as friends nor as foes are you welcome to me. York feels himself unwilling to receive them as friends, and unable to cope with them as foes" (C Clarke)

171 Things care Cp *Macb* iii 2 11, 2, "Things without all remedy should be without regard", *L L L* v 2 28, "Past cure is still past care"

SCENE IV

STAGE DIRECTION *Enter Salisbury* This was Sir John de Montacute, third Earl of Salisbury of that surname, son of Sir John de Montacute, one of the heroes of Cressy. He was one of the few faithful adherents of Richard, and was beheaded in 1400 for joining with Kent and Huntingdon in the conspiracy against Bolingbroke.

1 stay'd, remained here

8 **The bay trees wither'd** "Some of these prodigies are found in Holinshed, 'In this yeare in a mannere throughout all the realme of England, old *bare trees* wither'd,'" etc (Steevens), bay trees being evergreens

9 **And meteors heaven**, the fixed stars themselves are frightened by these meteors that shoot athwart the sky, **meteor**, Gk *μετεωρος*, adjective, raised up above the earth, soaring in the sky The mention of such portents of evil is frequent in Shakespeare, e.g. *J C* 1 3, *Hamlet* 1 1 113 25

10 **pale-faced**, i.e. usually so pale looks earth, looks down upon the earth with lurid face

11 **lean look'd**, lean looking, see Abb § 294

13 **to lose**, of losing

14 **The other to enjoy**, the other in the hope of enjoying what belongs to the rich by **rage and war**, owing to the furious fighting about to ensue

15 **These signs kings**, cp *J C* 11 2 30, 1, "When beggars die there are no comets seen, The heavens themselves blaze forth the death of kings"

17 **As well assured**, being thoroughly persuaded

18 **of heavy mind**, for the omission of the indefinite article, see Abb § 82

20 **base**, so far beneath the firmament, but also with the idea of the baseness of Richard's fall

21 **Thy sun west**, mists and vapours encircle your sun as it sinks beneath the western horizon, **lowly**, like "base" in the previous line, is used in a double sense

22 **Witnessing**, giving token of, cp *T G* iv 4 74, "Which, if my augury deceive me not, *Witness* good bringing up, fortune and truth"

23 **to wait upon**, to offer their service to

24 **crossly**, adversely

ACT III SCENE I

2 **vex**, trouble, see note on 1 1 138

3 **must part your bodies**, must part *from*, etc For the omission of the preposition after verbs of motion, see Abb § 198

5, 6 to wash hands, to free myself from the reproach of an necessarily taking life

9 A happy lineaments, a gentleman fortunate in his descent and personal appearance, lineaments was in former times used of the parts of the body generally, not as now of the face only, and there is nothing in the word which should limit it to the face

10 unhappied robbed of his good fortune clean, completely, cp *J C* i 3 35, "Clean from the purpose of the things themselves"

11 in manner, in a way, to be joined with Made a divorce sinful hours, hours spent in debauchery

13 Broke bed, kept him away from, etc, for the form broke, see Abb § 343

17 near in love, possibly near is here for 'nearer,' as in iii 2 64, v 1 88, *Macb* ii 3 146, "the near in blood, The nearer bloody"

19 Have stoop'd injuries, have been obliged to submit with out resenting it to the wrongs you have done me

20 And sigh'd clouds augmenting the clouds of a foreign sky by the breath of sighs from English lungs, Delius compares *R J* i 1 139, "With tears augmenting the fresh morning's dew, Adding to clouds more clouds with his deep sighs"

22 signories, manors, estates, of which I was the signor, lord, Ital *signore*, a lord, Lat *senior*, elder

23 Dispark'd my parks "To 'dispark' is a legal term, and signifies to divest a park, constituted by legal grant on prescription, of its name and character, by destroying the enclosures of such a park, and also the vert (or whatever bears green leaves, whether wood or underwood), and the beasts of the chase therein, and laying it open" (Malone)

24 From my coat, removed my family escutcheon from the windows of my house It was, and still is, a custom in great houses to blazon the coat of arms of the owner in stained glass, torn, probably used with a reference to the word coat

25 my impresse "An Impress (as the Italians call it) is a device in Picture with his Motto or Word, borne by Noble and Learned Parsonages, to notifie some particular conceit of their own," etc Camden's *Remains concerning Britain*, etc, p 447, ed 1674" (Dyce, *Glossary*) sign, outward symbol

28, 9 This death, the fact that you have done this, condemnns, etc, the death, i e which is the just penalty of such ill doers, for the, denoting notoriety, see Abb § 92

34 *plague*, punish, cp *R III* i 3 181, "And God, not we, have *plagued* thy bloody deed", *K J* ii 1 184, 6, "That he's not only *plagued* for her sin"

35 *dispatch'd*, a euphemism for 'executed'

37 *fairly entreated*, let her be treated with consideration and respect, cp *R III* iv 4 151, "be patient and *entreat* me *fair*," etc 38 *commends*, greetings, courteous messages

41 With letters large, with letters fully setting forth your goodwill towards her

43 To fight complices Theobald would eject this line, among other reasons because it was not till the year following that Henry employed force against Glendower, but this chieftain was at the time employed with Richard, and Shakespeare may have antedated the expedition undertaken against him

44 *Awhile holiday*, let us for awhile go to work and afterwards make holiday

SCENE II

STAGE DIRECTION the Bishop of Carlisle Thomas Merk, or Merkes, a Benedictine monk of Westminster, appointed to the see of Carlisle in 1397, was for his attachment to Richard deprived of his bishopric, but, after being sent to Westminster to remain in custody of its abbot, was in 1400 released, and pardoned on account of his excellent character

1 French, *Shaks Gen* p 32, points out that Barkloughly, or Berkeley Castle, about a mile from the east bank of the Severn, would not be opposite the coast of Wales, but to a division of the same county of Gloucester at hand, which is close at hand

2 *brooks*, endures, from A S *brucan*, to use, enjoy

3 *breaking seas*, dashing against and breaking over the vessel

4 *Needs*, necessarily, genitive of 'need,' used adverbially, as 'whiles,' 'twice' (i.e. *twies*)

5 To stand, at standing, the indefinite infinitive

8 As a long-parted child, as a mother long parted from her child, for a similar transposition, cp above, iii 1 9

9 *Plays meeting*, fondly indulges in both tears and smiles in meeting it, in her excess of joy mingles tears with smiles

11 *do thee favours*, show my love to you by my caresses

13. *his ravenous sense*, his voracious hunger

14. *thy venom*, whatever is venomous in you The belief in the poisonous nature of spiders was general at this time and long

after, and that they are poisonous in some countries is an established fact Cp *H F* ii 1 40, "There may be in the cup A *quidam* steep'd, and one may drink, depart, And yet partake no *venom*"

15 heavy-gated clumsily moving their way, "foe," in l 12, being regarded as a collective noun

16 annoyance and 'annoy' were in Shakespeare's day used in a stronger sense than at present Cp *J C* i 3 22, "I met a lion Who glared upon me, and went surly by Without *annoying* (i.e. injuring) me" The word is ultimately from the Lat *in odio*, *est mihi in odio* it is hateful to me Hence Sp *enoyo*, *enojo*, anger, offence, injury, Provins *ennei*, *enoi*

18 Yield, bring forth

20 Guard, protect it from their touch

21 double, forked, adders are the only poisonous snakes in England

22 Throw, by ejecting poison.

23 Mock not conjuration, do not laugh at my adjuration as being senseless

25 native, 'natural, king by right of birth, not 'born in the country' Shakespeare would remember that Richard was born at Bordeaux [in France]" (Cl Pr Edd) In v 6 32, he is called "Richard of Bordeaux"

26 falter under, totter under and succumb to

29 embraced, thankfully welcomed and made use of So, in *M V* iii 2 109, "rash *embraced* despair" means despair that had been too readily harboured

30 if heaven would, if heaven should be willing (to help us)

31 And we will not, and we are unwilling to do what is necessary on our part

33 too remiss, not sufficiently active, too is pleonastic

34 security, over confidence, see note on ii 1 226

35 substance, material resources

36 Discomfortable, discouraging, *sc* in the words he uses

37, 8 That when world, that when the sun, which penetrates into all corners, is to us hidden behind the globe, and lights our antipodes, and lights, for *that* lights, is Johnson's emendation, accepted by most modern editors If 'that' is retained the meaning will be 'that then lights'

39 range, freely rove about in quest of prey, cp *H V* iii 3 12, "And the flesh'd soldier In liberty of bloody hand shall *range*"

42 fires, lights up the eastern pines, the pine trees in the east (where he rises)

43 every guilty hole, every secret place where crimes are being committed

44 detested, detestable, for instances of the past participle used as equivalent to an adjective in *ble*, see Abb § 375

45 The cloak of night, the darkness of night by which they are screened from observation, cp *Marb* 1 5 54, "Nor heaven peep through the *blanket of the dark*"

46 trembling at themselves, *sc* on account of the crimes they have committed

48, 9 Who all antipodes, who all this time has been rejoicing in the darkness which made his crimes possible, while we (England's sun) have been absent, lighting up another clime (*sc* Ireland)

51 sit, expressing the permanency of the blush, cp 1 *H IV* iii 2 142, "For every honour *sitting* on his helm"

53 self-affrighted, without any accusation being brought

55 balm, the unction with which kings were anointed, cp *H V* iv 1 277, "'Tis not the *balm*, the sceptre and the ball"

56 worldly, mortal

57 The deputy elected, the vice gerent chosen by God to represent Him on earth

58 For every man, in counterpoise of every man, as a make weight to every man, cp *A C* iv 8 21, "A brain that nourishes our nerves, and can Get goal for goal of youth" *press'd*, as shown by Wedgwood (*Dict*), in the sense of 'compelled to serve' has nothing to do with 'press' in the sense of 'crush,' 'squeeze,' but is a corruption of *prest*, ready and *prest* money was ready money advanced when a man was hired for service, the shilling now given to recruits "At a later period, the practice of taking men for the public service by *compulsion* made the word to be understood as if it signified to *force* men into the service, and the original reference to earnest money was quite lost sight of"

59 shrewd, keen, literally, accursed, then used of sharp temper, bitter words, etc

60 for, in behalf of hath in heavenly pay, has as a soldier in the pay of heaven

62 still, ever

63 your power, your forces, as in ii 2 46

64 5 Nor near arm, neither nearer nor farther off than

muster now), for near, = nearer cp III 1 17, and 'far' for 'farther,' *H* *I* IV 4 442, "*Far* than Deucalion off "

65 discomfort tongue, distress of mind prompts my words

67 One day too late, i.e. the fact of your coming one day too late, I fear me, literally, for my part I fear me making the words more vivid, cp above, II 2 149

71 too late, being a day too late

74 Are gone to Bolingbroke, have gone over to Bolingbroke's side

76 But now, only a moment ago, i.e. before this news was told me

79 pale and dead, deadly pale, pale as a corpse, cp *Oth* II 3 177, "Honest Iago, that look'st *dead* with grieving "

80 All souls side, let all those who desire safety, desert me Cp II I IV 3 346, "Rather proclaim it, Westmoreland, through my host, That he that hath no stomach to this fight, Let him depart "

81 For time pride, for time has determined to punish my pride, and has shown its intention by fixing a stigma upon me

83 I had forgot myself, i.e. the dignified bearing which a king should show

85 twenty thousand, Delius reads "*forty* thousand " with the folios, and takes "forty" in an indefinite sense, as frequently in Shakespeare

86 Arm, put on your armour, prepare to defend yourself puny, insignificant, *F* *puisse* (Lat *post natus*, born after), a form which we retain in 'a *puisse* judge '

87 Look ground, do not be downcast

89 High be our thoughts, then if we are highly placed, let our thoughts correspond with our position

STAGE DIRECTION *Enter Scroop* Sir Stephen Scroop was the elder brother of Richard's chief minister, William le Scrope, Earl of Wiltshire, frequently mentioned in this play

90 to serve our turn, to do what is necessary

91 betide, befall

92 care-tuned, tuned by care to mournful utterances; deliver, express, communicate

93 prepared, i.e. to endure

94 The worst unfold, the worst news you can relate is no thing worse than worldly loss

95 my care, the cause of anxiety to me

99 be his fellow so, in that way be his equal

100 mend, cure

102, 3 Cry woe day, though woe, etc, cry aloud against me, the worst that can happen is death, and death will sooner or later come to all

104 arm'd, *sc* with fortitude

106 unseasonable, coming at a time when such weather is not expected

107 the silver rivers, the rivers which at other times are so silvery clear

109 his limits, its proper limits, as the banks are to rivers

112 White beards, even those whose beards are white with age thin and hairless scalps, scalps thinly covered with hair, or with no hair at all

114 to speak big, to imitate the accents of men

114, 5 and clap crown, and hastily encase their limbs, tender as those of women, in stiff unwieldy armour in order to fight against, etc For clap, cp *H VIII* i 4 9, "The very thought of this fair company *Clapp'd* wings to me"

116 Thy very beadsmen, even those who are in duty bound to pray for you, they receiving a stipend for that express purpose The old sense of 'bead' was 'prayer,' and the beads used in counting prayers were so called from that use

117 double fatal, doubly fatal, the berries of the yew tree being poisonous, and bows being made from its wood for use in war

118, 9 Yea, distaff women seat even women who should be occupied in wielding the distaff, now handle pikes, that have long lain idle, against your throne, bills, "an obsolete military weapon used chiefly by infantry, varying in form from a simple concave blade with a long wooden handle, to a kind of concave ax with a spike at the back and its shaft terminating in a spear-head" (Murray, *Eng Dict*)

122 5 Where is steps' What has happened to them in consequence of which they have allowed the dangerous enemy to march up and down our territory without offering any opposition, *i.e.* how comes it that they have offered no opposition to, etc For Measure, cp *Temp* ii 1 259, "A space whose every cubit Seems to cry out, 'How shall that Claribel Measure us back to Naples'?" Bagot had by this time escaped to Ireland, and as the king, in l 132, speaks of "three Judases," Theobald would read "where is he got?"

126 prevail are victorious in the contest

Macb iv 3 178, 9, "*Macb* The tyrant has not batter'd at their peace" *Ross* No, they were well at peace (*i.e.* in death) when I did leave them", and *A C* ii 5 33, "*Mes.* First, madam, he is well *Oleo* Why, there's more gold But, surrah, mark, we use To say the dead are well"

129 without, beyond 130 won, induced

131 in my warm'd, whom I affectionately cherished, who owe all their good fortune to my love, heart blood, cp i 1 172

132 Judas, *sc* Iscariot, the disciple who betrayed Christ

133 Would peace? were they so anxious to make peace with Bolingbroke?

133, 4 terrible offence for this offence may hell with all its terrors make war upon their souls foully spotted with treachery

135, 6 Sweet love hate, I see that sweet love when it changes its nature becomes, etc, property, that which is proper to it, peculiarly its own An adaptation of the proverb *Corruptio optimi pessima*

137 uncurse, remove your curse from, cp "unswear" *K J* iii 1 245, "unshout," *Cor* v 5 4

137, 8 their peace hands the peace which I spoke of as being made by them was one made by the loss of their heads, not by the lifting up of their hands in submission

140 full low, as low as it is possible for them to lie

141 Is, for the inflection in -s preceding a plural subject, see Abb § 335

144 No matter where, it is of no importance where he is no man, *let* no man

146 Make dust our paper, use dust for our paper rainy, tearful

148 Let's choose wills *i.e.* make all preparations for death

153 that small model, "That small portion of the earth heaped into the form of the human body by this expression the poet presents to the eye of imagination that little mound, just the length and breadth of a man's corpse, which is all that remains as his" (C Clarke) For model, cp *H V*, ii *Chor* 16, "O England! model to tny inward greatness" In paste there is probably an allusion to 'coffin' in the sense of a mould of paste for a pie, cp *T A*, v 2 189, *T S* iv 3 82.

155 For God's sake, I adjure you in the name of God

158 Some haunted deposed, some haunted by the ghosts of those whom they have deposed

159 sleeping kill'd, murdered while asleep

hairy temples then had *rounded* With coronet of fresh and fragrant flowers "

162 the antic, the fantastic creature, cp 1 *H VI* iv 7 18, "Thou *antic* Death, which laugh'st us here to scorn" "Douce suggests that this image was suggested to Shakespeare by the seventh print in the *Imagines Mortis* (attributed to Holbein, but without authority) There a king is represented sitting on his throne, sword in hand, with courtiers round him, while from his crown rises a grinning skeleton' (Cl Pr Edl)

163 *Scoffing* his state, making mock of his (the king's) splendour

164 a breath, a brief moment, cp *H V* ii 4 146, "A night is but *small breath* and little pause To answer matters of this consequence "

165 To monarchize, to play the monarch

166 *Infusing* conceit, filling him with empty self conceit, we should now say 'infusing into him self-conceit,' etc For self, as an adjective, a use very common in Shakespeare, cp *Mach* iii 4 142, "My strange and *self* abuse "

167 walls about, is as a wall around

168 *humour'd* thus, he (the king) being thus, etc

170 his castle wall his body which he regarded as an impregnable fortress and *farewell king* ' and there is an end to the mighty monarch '

171 Cover your heads, do not stand bareheaded before me in token of your respect

171, 2 mock not reverence, do not mock me, who am but flesh and blood like yourselves, with a display of, etc

173 Tradition, all traditional marks of honour form, formalities of respect

175 I live want, this and the following line are each wanting in two syllables, and various rearrangements of ll 175 7 have been proposed in order to readjust the metre, possibly 'like you' should be repeated before *feel want with bread*, by bread, see Abb § 193

176, 7 Taste, experience subjected king, to me who am subject to all these infirmities, how can you say that I am king, with a play on the word 'subject' as contrasted with king

179 But presently wail, but without delay remove the causes for grieving, prevent, literally go before, and so hinder another

180 since fear strength, since the effect of fear is to paralyze strength

182 your follies, in giving way to fear

183 Fear fight, give way to fear, and the result is that you will be killed, no worse fate can attend you if you take courage and fight, fight, the verb used substantively

184 And fight death, and to die fighting is to overcome death by robbing it of its victory (p 1 *Timothian*, vi 35, 'O death, where is thy sting O grave, where is thy victory')

185 Where breath, whereas to die fearing is to pay ignominious homage to death in breath there is the double allusion to expiring and to the use of servile language to some one dreaded

186 of, from

187 And learn limb and learn to make a limb serve the purpose of a whole body

188 Thou chidest me well, your reproaches are well deserved, said to Carlisle

189 To change doom, to meet you in combat to decide which of us is to fall

190 is over blown, has passed over the comparison being to a storm for ague fit, cp above, ii 1 96

191 our own, what properly belongs to us

194 complexion, appearance

195 inclination of the day, how the day is likely to turn out

196 by my eye, by the sadness of my looks dull and heavy, carrying on the simile of the weather

198 by small and small, by telling you my news bit by bit

201 And all up, and all the castles in the north which were held in your behalf have been yielded up

202, 3 And party, and all your supporters among the gentry of the south have taken up arms on his side

204, 5 Beshrew despair 'evil befall you for having led me out of that path to despair which I was pleasantly beginning to tread, to 'beshrew' was used as a slight, sometimes very slight, malediction, e g *M V* iii 2 14, "Beshrew your eyes They have o'erlook'd me and divided me," said playfully by Portia to Bassanio

206 What we now? what have you now to say to us in the way of comfort? there can be none left us now

208 be of comfort, be of good cheer, be comforted

210 A king obey, Boswell compares *K J* iii 1 69, "For

of producing a crop, or perhaps, let those who have some hope that is capable of growth, go to plough the soil in which it has been sown, 'hope' being a noun, and 'hath' a plural. For *ear* (which in this sense is connected with the Lat *arare*, Gk *arōw*, to plough), cp *A W* 1 3 47, "He that *ears* my land spares my team"

214 To alter this, to change my determination counsel, advice

215 double wrong, in comforting me only to depress me all the more

218 night day, used figuratively

SCENE III

1 So that, so it turns out that

7 besee, become, be proper in

8, 9 alack head, alas for the grievous time when such a sacred head is obliged, etc. For should, meaning 'be obliged to,' see Abb § 326

10 mistakes, the *e* sonant, as in 1 *H VI* 1 3 5, more common in substantives, and especially in proper names

11 The time hath been, once upon a time, cp *Macb* iii 3 79, "The times have been That, when the brains were out, the man would die"

12 Would you have been, if you had thought fit to be

13, 4 to shorten length, as to shorten you by the whole length of your head for so curtailing his title

15 Mistake should, do not unnecessarily misinterpret his words

16, 7. Take not heads, do not arrogate to yourself more than properly belongs to you, lest in so doing you make the mistake of thinking that heaven is not above us (ready to punish arrogance)

20 what, an exclamation of surprise

26. lime and stone, i.e. of the walls made of blocks of stone united by lime.

29 Of holy reverence, holy and reverend

30. be like, probably, literally, by like, i.e. by what is likely

32 rude ribs, rough exterior, but also with an allusion to the figurative sense of 'rude,' in that they kept out those who wished to enter, and possibly with an allusion to the name of the castle. For ribs, cp *K J* ii. 1 384, "The flinty ribs of this contemp-

34 his ruin'd ears, which shall pierce the battered loop holes of the castle, carrying on the metaphor in "rib" So in *M V* ii 5 34, 'ears' is used of the casements of a window deliver, pronounce this message

37 sends allegiance, proffers loyal submission

38 hither come who has come here, to be joined with the words "Henry Bolingbroke" Of the change here from the third to the first person C Clarke remarks, "The effect produced has freedom, strength, and colloquial naturalness—all of which are essentially dramatic"

39 Even at his feet, as low as at his feet, i.e. in the humblest way possible

40, 1 Provided granted, provided that the repeal of my banishment and the restoration of my lands be unconditionally granted

42 the advantage of my power, the advantage which my power gives me

43 And lay blood, Delius compares *Lear*, iv 6 201, "To use his eyes for garden water pots, Ay, and laying autumn's dust"

45 8 The which show As to which, how far I am from wishing that this fair land should be drenched with blood, my humble submission will show For The which, in this sense, see Abb § 272, fair qualifies land

49 signify as much, make this much known to him

52, 3 That perused, so that the king and his followers may from the time worn, ragged, battlements be able to see clearly how well appointed my forces are, tattered, now used only of things liable to be torn, clothes, etc., and so generally by Shakespeare, perused, thoroughly scanned, cp ii *H IV* iv 2 94, "March by us, that we may peruse the men We should have coped withal"

54 7 Methinks heaven. To me it seems that the meeting of two such antagonists as Richard and myself should be as terrible as that of lightning and rain when, by the thundering shock with which they clash, the heavy clouds are rent asunder The imagery is unscientific, since it is not by the meeting of fire and water that the clouds are torn, but by the clash of the clouds that the lightning is generated

58 Be he the fire, let him by his wrath represent the lightning

60 not on him, i.e. not causing him annoyance

61 mark looks, for the redundant object, see Abb § 414

62-7 See occident Dyce gives this speech to Percy, while

and continue to l 71 Either arrangement seems better than making Bolingbroke the speaker

63 blushing, red with fury discontented, angry

64 the fiery portal, the gateway of the east which he enters at his rising, and which is thus made fiery, fiery, proleptic

65 are bent, are determined, we now say 'bent on doing, not 'bent to do'

66, 7 to stain occident, to befoul the track along which he passes to his setting in the west, occident, literally 'falling' (of the sun)

69, 70 lightens majesty, flashes forth looks of awe inspiring majesty, majesty, here metrically a dissyllable

70, 1 alack, show ' alas, a woeful thing it would be that so fair an appearance as he presents should be marred by any harm, alack, for woe, alas, for the woe that would result, for alack, see note on iii 3 8

72 amazed, utterly bewildered, see note on i 3 81

72, 3 thus long knee, thus long have we stood expecting to see your knee bowed in awe of us

74 Because king, because till now we supposed ourself to be, etc

76 awful, reverential, full of awe

77, 8 show us stewardship, produce evidence to show that God has dismissed us, etc, hand, sign manual, i.e. authority

81 Unless usurp, except by being guilty of sacrilege, theft, or usurpation,—call it which you will

83 Have torn us, have done violence to their souls by wrenching them from their allegiance Probably, as the Cl Pr Edd and Schmidt think, the use of torn here is for the sake of the jingle with turning

84 And we are, and that we are

88, 9 Your children head, the unborn and unbegotten children of you who dare to raise your subject hands

90. Threat the glory, threaten to mar the glory

91 yond, yonder; adverb, yon being the adjective

93 dangerous treason, treason dangerous in its consequences to him who is guilty of it

94. testament, will, bleeding, bloody "Bolingbroke," says Stevens, "is to open the testament of war, that he may peruse what is there decreed in his favour" In plain language he has

95 But ere peace, but before he shall peacefully wear the crown he is expecting to win

96 crowns, heads

97 Shall ill face, shall disfigure the flower-decked surface of England's soil There may also possibly be in the flower of England's face a reference to 'the choicest youth of England, by which Warburton explains the phrase

98 maid pale, pale as the face of a nightened maiden The Cl Pr Edd compare *H VI* ii 4 47, "I pluck this *pale* and *maiden* blossom here"

100 faithful English blood, the blood of loyal Englishmen

102, 3 Should so upon ' Should in this way be attacked by barbarous arms wielded in civil warfare, for uncivil cp *T A* iv 1 57, "In this *uncivil* and unjust extent Against thy peace

105, 6 And by bones, and swears by the tomb in which your royal grandsire's bones are honourably laid

107 royalties bloods, the royal descent which both of you in common have

108 head, source

109 by the Gaunt, by the hand of warlike Gaunt now lying in his grave

110 worth, personal merits

111 Comprising said, in which is comprised everything that may serve as the subject of an oath or asseveration

112 scope, aim, mark

113 his lineal royalties, the princely dignities that belong to him by descent

114 Enfranchisement, freedom from all disabilities, such as banishment, and so restoration of his rights on his knees, to be taken with to beg

115 on thy royal party, by you, the king, on your part, by you as party to the agreement

116 will commend to rust, will lay by and consign to rust to 'commend,' = to commit, entrust to one's charge, make over with praise, and so simply to praise, is a doublet of 'command, from Lat *commendare*, from *cum*, with, and *mandare*, to commit, entrust

117 barbed, accoutred, "also spelt *barded*, the older form Cotgrave has '*Bardé*,' masculine, *ée*, feminine, barbed, or trapped as a great horse ' F *barde*, horse armour" (Skeat, *Ety Dict*)

119 **This just**, this, on his honour as a prince he swears is true, for **just**=true, cp *H IV* v 3 126, "the things I speak are *just*", *Tim* v 1 17, "a *just* and true report"

121 **returns**, *sc* answer, replies

122 **right welcome**, thoroughly welcome

123 **fair demands**, demands which I admit to be just

124 **shall be contradiction**, shall be granted fully and without reservation.

125 **With all hast**, in the most gracious terms that you have at your command

126 **Speak** commends, convey kind messages to him who is sure to listen to them with a kind ear

128 **so poorly**, so humbly

130 **and so die**, and die in maintaining our challenge

136 **words of sooth**, conciliatory words, 'sooth,' first an adjective, =true, then a substantive, =truth, "to 'soothe,' originally 'to assent to as being true,' hence to say yes to, to humour by assenting, and generally to humour" (Skeat, *Ety Dict*) Cp *Per* 1 2 44, "When Signior *Sooth* here does proclaim a peace, He flatters you"

137 **my name**, my title

140 **scope**, room to move in, free play, cp *R III* iv 1 35, "That my pent heart may have some *scope* to *beat*"

147 **a set of beads**, a string of beads, a rosary by means of which the number of prayers said was counted, see note on "beadsman," *iii* 2 116 for, in exchange for

149 **My gay apparel** Steevens quotes Holinshed, "he had one cote which he caused to be made for him of gold and stone [i.e. adorned with precious stones], valued at 30,000 marks" Stowe says "three thousand markes"

150 **figured goblets**, highly-chased gold and silver drinking cups **dish of wood**, wooden platter, or perhaps, drinking vessel

151 **palmer's**, pilgrims to the Holy Land on their return bore with them a palm branch in token of their having visited the Holy Sepulchre, hence 'palmer's' = pilgrims generally The palm branches were in memory of those carried by the people who went forth to meet Christ as he rode into Jerusalem before his crucifixion, see *John*, *xii* 12 3

152 **carved saints**, images of saints carved in wood, ivory, etc., and put up in the cells of hermits, etc., for adoration

153 **a little grave**, a humble grave, such as hermits dug for themselves,

156 of common trade, commonly trodden upon, from the A S *tredan*, to tread, cp *H VIII* v 1 36, "Stands in the gap and trade of moe preferments"

157 May hourly head Johnson remarks that Shakespeare is very apt to deviate from the pathetic to the ridiculous, but Richard's exaggeration here is quite in keeping with his character as presented by Shakespeare

158 For on live, for now, while I am still living, they trample on my dearest feelings

159 And buried once and when I am once buried why not, there is no reason why they should not, etc

161 despised tears, tears at which our enemies mock

162 they, our tears, lodge, lay, cp *Marb* iv 1 55, "Though bladed corn be *lodged*"

164, 5 Or shall we tears? or shall we indulge in frivolous trifling about our sorrow, and make some fanciful compact about shedding tears?

166 As thus, place, as, for instance binding ourselves to go on continually dropping them, etc

167 fretted, worn, to 'fret,' literally, to eat away, from A S *fretan*, contracted from *for-etan* from *for*, intensive prefix, and *etan*, to eat" Skeat, *Ety Dict*)

168, 9 and therein eyes, and, we being therein laid, it will be said there lie two kinsmen who dug their graves with, etc, the relative, as so frequently, omitted after *kinsmen*. The inflection in *s* with a plural subject is here due to the requirements of rhyme, cp *V A* 1128, "She lifts the coffee lids that close the eyes, Where, lo, two lamps, burnt out, in darkness *lies*"

170 Would not well? Would not this foolish trifling be a suitable employment for us?

172 Most mighty prince, said, as "King Bolingbroke" in the next line, with ironical humility

175 make a leg, curtsy to me, make an obeisance, says ay, assents

176 the base court, the lower courtyard, the court on the ground floor, *F bas cour* doth attend, is waiting

178, 9 like jades, like bright Phaethon unable to manage his fractious steeds Phaethon (i.e. 'the shining one'), son of Helios (the Sun), asked his father to allow him for one day to drive the chariot of the sun across the heavens, but, he being unable to control the steeds, the chariot was borne out of the usual track, and Phaethon fell to the earth, manage, a term very frequent in Shakespeare for the control of horses, jades is

181 To come grace, in coming at the summons of traitors and doing them homage (as I do now)

182 Down, court ' down, king ' what, I am to come down to the base court ' the king is to come down '

183 For night owls sing For everything in nature is awry, night owls shrieking at a time when, and in a place where, larks should be mounting aloft with a blithe carol, and therefore there is nothing strange in a king being compelled to come down at the bidding of a traitor subject

185 fondly, foolishly, the original sense of the word

186 Yet he is come, yet in spite of his being almost out of his mind, he is come

187 apart, aside, at a distance from us "The phrase is borrowed from the F *a part*, which Cotgrave gives, and explains by '*apart*, alone, singly,' etc — Lat *ad*, to, and *partem*, accusative case of *par*, a part" (Skeat, *Ety Dict*)

188 show fair duty, behave with all becoming reverence

191 To make, in making, the indefinite use of the infinitive

192 Me rather had, for this ungrammatical remnant of ancient usage, see Abb § 230

193 my displeased eye, my eye which is no way pleased at seeing this mockery of reverence

194 your heart is up, your ambition is soaring aloft

195 Thus high at least, pointing to his head

196 but for mine own, only to claim what rightfully belongs to me

197 Your own all, not only what is rightfully yours, but I and everything are in your hands

198, 9 So far love, I would have you 'mine' so far as my loyal service shall deserve your love, and in no other sense 'mine'

203 Tears show remedies, tears indicate love, but are powerless in the way of remedy

204 too young, Richard and Bolingbroke were of the same age, being both born in 1366

206 What you will have, what you are determined to have willing, willingly, with a play on will

207 what force do, what under the compulsion of force we must do

208 Set on towards, set out for, cp *W T* iv 4 682, "Thus

SCENE IV

3 **bowls**, a favourite game in Shakespeare's day, and one to which he makes frequent allusion

4 **full of rubs**, full of friction, to rub and a 'rub' were technical terms at bowls, used of bowls when jostling against one another or against the 'jack,' or 'mistress,' the small bowl at which they were aimed

5 **against the bias**, in a direction contrary to that which it ought to take The bias was a weight let into the bowl in order to give it sway, and so enable it by taking a curved path to get near the jack when from other balls being in the way, or owing to irregularity of the ground, it could not approach in a direct line

7, 8 **My legs grief** my legs cannot keep time to any joyous dance at a time when my heart is overwhelmed with grief A **measure** was a stately dance with slow, measured steps, though the word was sometimes used of a dance in general, and in this sense it is employed in the former line, while in the latter it means limit, extent There is a similar play upon the word in *M A n* 1 74, see the whole passage, ll 72 83

13 **being altogether wanting**, since it is completely absent

14 **remember, remind**, cp 1 3 269, above

15 **being altogether had**, since I am in complete possession of it, since there is nothing in the way of grief which is not present to me

18 **And what complain**, and about that which is lacking there is no use in complaining, for **complain**, used transitively, cp *Lucr* 1839, "And by chaste Lucrece' soul that late *complain'd* Her wrongs to us," for **boots**, see 1 3 174, above

20 **Shouldst please**, would be certain to please

22, 3 **And I could thee** I have such abundance of tears of my own, ready to fall, that if weeping could relieve my sorrow, and help to make me joyous, I should be able to sing for joy without needing to borrow such helps from you or any one

26 **My wretchedness pins**, I will wager my wretchedness against a row of pins, i e something of which the magnitude is infinite against something of very trifling nature Cp the proverb, "It was Lombard Street (i e a very rich street where the bankers most did congregate) to a China orange (i e something of small value)"

27 **State, state affairs**

28 **Against a change**, in anticipation of a change, cp *M N D*

forerun with woe, woe is heralded by woe, i.e. sorrowful talk

29 **apricocks**, from "F *abricot*, from Port *albricoque*, an apricot These words are traced, in Webster and Littré, back to the Arabic *al barqûq* where *al* is the Arabic definite article, and the word *barqûq* is no true Arabic word, but a corruption of the Mid Gr *πραϊκοκιον*, pl *πραϊκοκια*, borrowed from the Lat *præcoqua*, apricots, neuter plural of *præcoquus*, another form of *præcocus*, lit *præcocious*, early ripe" (Skeat, *Ety Dict*)

30 **their sire**, the parent tree

31 **their prodigal weight**, their lavish, excessive weight, with an allusion to the burden that prodigal sons are to their parents

32 **supportance**, support in the way of a prop

34 **sprays**, the lesser branches

35 **look too lofty**, are of too ambitious a growth

36 **even**, uniform

37 **You thus employ'd**, you being thus, etc **away**, completely

38 **noisome**, noxious, injurious, "formed from the M E *noy*, annoyance, injury, with the E suffix *some* *Noy* is a mere contraction of M E *anoy*, *anoi* from the Lat phrase *in odio habere*" (Skeat, *Ety Dict*), see note on iii 2 16, above **without profit**, making no return for the sustenance they derive from the soil

40 **in the compass of a pale**, in the small compass of an enclosure like this garden, a 'pale' is a stake for enclosing land, then the land so enclosed

42 **Showing estate**, exhibiting, as in a miniature, the well governed estate of our garden, the garden being in point of size a miniature of the kingdom, but well ordered while the kingdom was in a state of anarchy For model, cp *H V*, ii *Chor* 16

43 **sea-walled garden**, i.e. England, cp above, ii 1 47

45 **all**, wholly, **ruin'd**, broken down

46 **knots**, beds of flowers laid out in intricate devices, cp *L L L* i. i 249, "from the west corner of thy curious *knotted* garden" Steevens compares *Par Lost*, iv 242, "Flowers worthy Paradise, which not nice art In beds and curious *knots*, but nature boon Pour'd forth"

47 **caterpillars**, cp above, ii 3 166, "The *caterpillars* of the commonwealth"

48, 9 **He that leaf** he, to whose want of proper care and wholesome checks it is due that this spring has been over-luxuriant, has now himself prematurely come to the autumn of

phrase "the fall," or "the fall of the year," is still in use in America

50, 1 The weeds up, those noxious parasites that were sheltered from harm by the patronage of his power, and which, while seeming to support him, were in reality preying upon his life

52 Are pluck'd all, have been completely extirpated, root and all, not merely the growth above the soil, but also the very roots

55 wasteful, extravagant, lavish of his resources what pity, for the omission of the indefinite article, see Abb § 86

56 dress'd, put in order; Malone quotes *Menenius*, ii 15 "and put him into the garden of Eden, to dress it and keep it", dress is ultimately from the Lat *directus*, straight

57 at time of year, at the proper season

58 wound, incise

59 in sap and blood, in the matter of sap and life juice, the words are equivalent to 'sap which is the blood of trees'

60 it, the tree, confound, ruin, destroy

61 growing, *sc* into power

62, 3 They might duty, they might have lived to show the wholesome outcome of loyal allegiance, and he to enjoy its benefit

64 bearing boughs, boughs that may be trusted to produce fruit

66 Which waste, which hours wasted in idleness, idle, proleptic, made idle by the waste

67 shall, will certainly

68 Depress'd, beaten down

69 'Tis doubt he will be, it is to be apprehended that he will be, cp in *H VI* iv 8 37, "The doubt is that he will seduce the rest"

71 black, most gloomy

72 press'd to death, an allusion to the punishment of death, inflicted upon those who when arraigned refused to plead, by means of heavy weights placed upon their stomach, cp *M A* iii 1 76, "O, she would laugh me Out of myself, press me to death with wit" through want of speaking is used in a double sense (1) from a desire to speak, (2) in consequence of not speaking

73 old Adam's likeness, Adam being the first gardener, "the grand old gardener," as Tennyson calls him in the earlier editions of *Lady Clara Vere de Vere*, i 51, cp in *H VI* iv. 2 142,

75, 6 hath suggested man? has tempted you to cause a second fall of man in announcing the deposition of the king? The serpent tempted Eve to eat of the forbidden fruit, and Eve in her turn tempted Adam, who in consequence was driven out of the garden of Eden, 'suggest' = tempt, is very frequent in Shakespeare

78 thou little earth, you who are little better than the earth you till, a mere clod, cp *M A* ii 1 63-6, "Would it not grieve a woman to be overmastered with a piece of valiant dust? to make an account of her life to a *clod* of wayward marl?" For the separation between two parts of the adjectival phrase, see Abb § 419a

79 Divine, predict

80 Camest thou by, did you obtain, cp *J C* ii 1 169, "O, that we then could *come by* Cæsar's spirit", but the phrase is a very frequent one for tidings, see note on ii 1 272

82 To breathe, in speaking, the infinitive used indefinitely

83 hold, grasp, he, for the insertion of the pronoun after a proper name, see Abb § 243

84. are weigh'd, have been put into the balance

86 And some light, some few frivolities the only result of which, instead of making him heavier, is to make him lighter, cp *M V* iii 2 90, 1, "Which therein works a miracle in nature, Making them *lightest* that wear most of it" some few, though used to minimize, in reality means a great many

89 odds, Shakespeare uses the word both as a singular and a plural, the former more often, and this seems to have been the more general practice with Elizabethan writers, *H V* iv 3 5, "a fearful *odds*", *A C* iv 15 66, "The *odds* is gone", weighs down, outweighs in the balance

92 Nimble mischance, misfortune that is so quick in finding its way to a person, cp *M V* i 2 21, 2, "such a hale is madness the youth, to skip o'er the meshes of good counsel the cripple"

93 Doth not me, ought you not to have made your embassy to me before all others?

95. To serve me, to pay your service to me

98, 9 What, Bolingbroke? was I born to no happier fate than by my sad looks to add a grace to the, etc., an allusion to the Roman custom by which the captives made in war were paraded in the triumphal entry of the conquerors, cp *J C* i 1 38. 9. "What tributaries follow him to Rome To grace in captive

102, 3 so that curse, if in that way your misery might be lightened, I should be willing that the curse you invoke upon my skill should be fulfilled

104 fall, let fall, cp *Temp* v 1 64, "Mine eyes *Fall* fellowly drops

105 I'll set grace, I will plant a row of rue, that sour plant that is called 'herb of grace', cp *Hamlet* iv 5 181, "There's *rue* for you, and here's some for me we may call it herb grace o' Sundays" Etymologically there is no connection between 'rue, the plant and 'rue,' or 'ruth, sorrow, but the bitterness of the plant caused it to be connected in the popular mind with repentance, and so with grace, the result of repentance

106 even for ruth merely for sorrow's sake, out of the pity I feel for her.

ACT IV SCENE I

STAGE DIRECTION *Westminster Hall* "The rebuilding of Westminster Hall, which Richard had begun in 1397, being finished in 1399, the first meeting of Parliament in the new edifice was for the purpose of deposing him" (Malone)

3 What thou dost know, stating what you know

4 Who king, who joined with the king in bringing it about

5 The bloody end, the bloody deed which brought him to an untimely end, cp *T G* iii 1 21, "A pack of sorrows which would press you down to your *timely* grave"

6 set before my face, bring face to face with me

9 Scorns deliver'd, is too proud to deny what it has once uttered

10 dead, gloomy, Schmidt thinks the word may possibly mean 'dull,' 'inactive'

11 of length, far reaching

12 restful, peaceful, as contrasted with the scene of the murder

16 crowns, a 'crown' is a five shilling piece

17 Than Bolingbroke's return, than *endure* Bolingbroke's, etc. For the ellipsis, see Abb § 390 England, a trisyllable here, as "Ireland," in ii 4 103, above

18 withal, moreover

19 In this death, if this cousin of yours were to die

birth The belief in astrology was strongly held in Shakespeare's day, and his allusions to it are numerous, cp *Lear*, 1 2 128 45

22 On equal terms, as to meet him on terms of equality in order to chastise him

24 With the lips, by the accusation which his slanderous lips have brought against me, *attainder*, "formerly, when sentence of death was pronounced, the criminal was said to be attainted, *attinctus*, stained, or blackened The consequences of attainder were forfeiture and corruption of blood" (Heard, *Shakespeare as a Lawyer*, p 35)

25 gage, see 1 1 69 the manual seal of death, which is a seal that my hand affixes to the warrant for thy death

26 marks thee out, designates as being doomed to hell

28 In thy heart blood by the shedding of your heart's blood though being, in spite of its being all, wholly

29 the temper sword, my well-tempered sword, cp *Oth* v 2 253, "I have another weapon in this chamber, It is a sword of Spain, the ice brook's *temper*" "The harder the steel the brighter polish would it take, hence the polish may be taken as a measure of its temper" (Cl Pr Edd)

30 it, the gage thrown down by Aumerle

31 one, i e the king

31, 2 I would so, I wish that he who has provoked me were the noblest of all here present

33 If that sympathy, if your valour will not consent to fight with any but those who are your equals in rank, for sympathy = correspondence, cp *Oth* ii 1 232, "*sympathy* in years, manners, and beauties" For that, as a conjunctive affix, see Abb § 287

36 and vauntingly it, not only did you say so, but you said so in the most boastful terms

39, 40 And I point, and I with the point of my sword will force back that falsehood into your heart, where it was fabricated, rapier, Johnson points out that the rapier was not in use in England till two centuries after this time

42 I would hour, I wish that the combat could take place now

45 In this appeal, in thus challenging you, see 1 1 4 all, wholly unjust, false

46 And that thou art so, and in confirmation of your being so

47, 48 To prove breathing, pledging myself to substantiate

50 And never steel and never again brandish my sword
over the helmet of my foe in vengeance of the dishonour done to me.

52 I task like I set the earth the same task, i.e. that of
bearing my gage till it is thrown upon it.

53 lies, i.e. charges of lying.

55 From sun to sun from sunrise to sunset, cp. *Macb* iii 2
70, One score 'twixt us and the sun, i.e. 44 'Tisweep
thwart clock and clock.

56 Engage it to the trial, bind yourself to the combat by
taking it up, and throwing your own gage down.

57 Who sets all who else desires to make a match with
me? I will accept every challenge offered. The language is
taken from gaming, where to 'set' was to stake a certain sum
against another sum, the contest being decided by a cast of the
dice, cp. *M \ D* iii 1 130, 'for, indeed who would not have
wit to so foolish a bird' who would give a bird the lie though
he cry 'cuckoo never so.'

62 in presence, present.

63 witness with me, join with me in bearing witness.

65 boy "Fitzwater succeeded his father at the age of
eighteen in 1856, and therefore at this time was thirty-one, and
could hardly be called a 'boy' (*Cl Pr Edd*).

67 That it vengeance, that it (my sword) shall execute
upon you vengeance that shall atone for your slander, not only
vengeance, but vengeance retaliatory of your slander.

70 my honour's pawn, the pledge that I will honourably meet
you in combat.

71 Engage trial, see note on l 56.

72 fondly, foolishly, cp. iii 3 185 a forward horse, one
only too eager to run his course.

74 in a wilderness, i.e. in a place where no one could hinder
the combat, cp. *Macb* iii 4 104, 'And dare me to the desert
with thy sword.'

77 To tie correction, by which I bind myself to administer
to you the severest chastisement, my, subjective, my correction
of you.

78, 9 As I appeal by all the hopes I have of thriving in
this new state of things upon which we are entering, I pledge
myself, etc.

83, 4 Some honest lies, let some honest Christian lend me
a gage which I may throw down in assertion that Norfolk lies.
Malinsd noted by Steevens, says that "he threw down a

85 If repeal'd, if the king will allow him to be recalled from exile, for repeal'd, cp above, u 2 49 to try his honour, to vindicate his honour in combat with me

86 These differences gage, these quarrels shall remain undecided, the challengers and challenged being bound by their gages to meet in combat when Norfolk is recalled

89 signories, see note on iii 1 22

90 enforce his trial, compel him to meet Aumerle in combat

93 Jesu, "This form of the name 'Jesus' is used in the oblique cases, or with the optative mood, or in exclamation" (Cl Pr Edd)

94 Streaming the ensign, bearing the flag streaming in the wind, to 'stream' used as a transitive verb only here and in J C iii 1 201, "as fast as they (thy wounds) stream forth thy blood"

96 toil'd war, worn out by warlike exploits retired him self, retired, for the reflexive use of verbs which are now intransitive, see Abb § 296

97 9 And there Christ Malone points out that this is not historically true, Norfolk's death not occurring till after that of Richard

100 Under whose long, whose soldier he had so long been

104 Of good old Abraham, cp R III iv 3 38, 'The sons of Edward sleep in Abraham's bosom', a reference to Luke, xvi 22, "And it came to pass, that the beggar died, and was carried by the angels into Abraham's bosom"

106 Till we trial, till we fix the day on which the combats shall take place

108 plume pluck'd, stripped of his plumes, brought low

111 descending now from him, which now falls from him, for the sake of the antithesis with ascend.

112 Henry, pronounced here as a trisyllable

114 Marry, a corruption of Mary, the mother of Christ, used as a petty oath

115, 6 Worst truth, least worthy may I be to speak in this royal presence, yet upon me (or as a priest) more than any it is incumbent to speak the truth, beseeching, it is beseeching, it becoms.

117 Would God that, i.e. it would be well if God should will that, etc

119 robesse, nobility of nature

120 Learn teach - as frequently in Shakespeare

123 are not judged, have not sentence passed upon them but they hear without their being present to hear the charges brought against them

124 apparent, manifest, cp 1 l 13

125 figure, representative

127 planted, installed, cp *R III* iii 7 216, 'But we will *plant* some other in the throne

128 subject in adjective, cp *K J* iv 2 171, no *subject* enemies, i.e. no enemies among my subjects

129 And and that too, for this emphatic use of *and*, see Abb § 95 forfend, forbid, 'an extraordinary compound, due to E for and *read*, a familiar abbreviation of *depend*, just as *tenor* (still in use) is a familiar abbreviation of *defence*' (Heat, *Eng Dict*)

130 refined, "freed from guilt and redeemed by Christ (Schmidt)

131 heinous, hateful, F *haine*, hate obscene, foul

133 for, in behalf of

139 go sleep, go to sleep, i.e. to dwell quietly with, for the omission of to, see Abb § 349

140 seat of peace, where peace usually dwells

141 Shall kin confound. "Wars in which fellow country men and kinsmen shall be ranged on opposite sides will destroy all the obligations of family affection and of humanity 'Kin refers to blood relationship, 'kind' to our common human nature Cp *Ham* i 2 65 "A little more than kin, and less than kind" (Cl Pr Edd)

144 Golgotha, see *Matthew*, xxvii 33, "And when they were come to a place called *Golgotha*, that is to say a *place of a skull*," etc, and cp *Marb* i 2 40, "Except they meant to bathe in reeking wounds And memorize another *Golgotha*"

145 raise, stir up this house, this family, i.e. of Englishmen

146 division, dissension, disunion, cp 1 *H IV* iv 1 62, "The quality and hair of our attempt Brooks no *division*"

147 cursed earth, earth cursed by these conflicts

148 Prevent, the old copies read *prevent* it, I have followed Pope and Dyce in omitting the pronoun

149 child, those yet in their childhood

150 for your pains, in return for the trouble you have taken

151 Of capital treason, on the charge of being guilty of capital treason

152 be it your charge, take it as a charge imposed upon you ;

153 his day of trial, the day on which he shall be put on his trial to answer the charge of capital treason

155 in common view, in the sight of all men

157 Without suspicion, without being suspected of unfair dealing conduct, conductor, escort, cp *R III* 1 1 45, "hath appointed This *conduct* to convey me to the Tower"

159 Procure answer, find persons to be bail for your appearance at the time when you shall be called upon to meet the charges brought against you

160 beholding, the active participle, originated in a mistake for 'beholden,' the passive participle, in the sense of under an obligation, a sense which is not found in other parts of the verb, though a natural one of *be hold*. For the participle in *ing* used as an equivalent to *en*, see Abb § 372

161 And little hands, and little help did we expect from you

STAGE DIRECTION *The regalia* the insignia of a king, his crown, sceptre, ball, etc

163, 4 Before reign'd, before I have had time to get rid of those kingly thoughts which occupied my mind while I was yet a king, for shook, see Abb § 343

166, 7 Give sorrow submission, allow sorrow for a time to school me to this submissive bearing which I must in future show, Yet, still

168 favours, features, appearance, "'in beauty,' says Bacon in his 43rd Essay, 'that of favour is more than that of colour, and that of decent and gracious motion more than that of favour.' The word is now lost to us in that sense, but we still use *favoured* with *well*, *ill*, and perhaps other qualifying terms, for featured, or looking" (Craik, *Eng of Shakespeare*, § 54)

169 sometime, formerly, see note on 1 2 54

170 So Judas did to Christ, a reference to the words of Judas as he betrayed Christ *Matthew*, xxvi 49, "And forthwith he came to Jesus, and said, *Hail*, master, and kissed him" in twelve, among his twelve disciples

173 Am I clerk, it was the duty of the clerk to say 'amen,' i.e. so be it, at the end of each prayer read by the priest

174 although he, although in uttering that prayer I am praying for Bolingbroke, not for myself

175 And yet me And yet I will say 'amen' if in the sight of heaven I am still king

177 of thine own good will, of your own accord

181 **seize**, take hold of

185 **owes**, *owns*, as frequently in Elizabethan English, the final *n*, being dropped **filling one another** which fill one another, the full bucket when raised raising the empty one to descend and fill it self

188 **That bucket down** that bucket which is down

193 **still am I king** of those on K I n 1 371, 2, ' *Kingd* of our fears until our fears are over, Be by some certain king purged and deposed

195 **Your cares down**, the fact of your cares being set up, does not, etc

196 **My care done** that which troubles me now is the absence of care, due to my former anxieties (i.e. those I had as a king having ceased

197 **Your care won** that which troubles you is the presence of anxieties, (due to the pains you have taken to acquire them

198 **The cares away** though I have given away to you my cares as king, yet I still retain them (in the thought of what be longs to me as king)

199 **They tend stay**, they go with, are attendant upon, the possessor of the crown, and yet they stay with me in the recollection of my former state

201 **Ay, no, be**, having first said **Ay** (yes), 'no, he goes on to pun upon the sound of 'ay' I) and says, I must not say 'ay,' i.e. I, for I must be nothing

202 **Therefore thee**, therefore I must not utter the word 'no,' for I resign to you, and, so doing, forfeit the right to use words of denial

203 **undo myself**, unking myself, strip myself of all that be longs to me as king

207 **balm**, see note on m 2 55

209 **With mine state**, by my own words abdicate that sanctity, divine right, which belonged to me as king

210 **all duty's rites**, all ceremonious marks of respect due to me as king

212 **manors**, estates belonging to me as a lord, "properly 'a place to dwell in', from O F *manoir*, *maner*, to dwell — Lat *manere*, to dwell, remain" (Skeat, *Ety Dict*), **revenues** with the accent on the second syllable **forgo**, see note on i 3 160

213 **deny**, cancel, abrogate

215 that swear to thee, of those that take an oath of allegiance to you

216 Make, may God make

217 And thou, for the nominative pronoun where we should expect to find an oblique case, see Abb § 216 achieved, see note on u 1 254

219 soon he Richard, *may* Richard, etc

221 sunshine days, days of sunshine, bright, prosperous, days

225 Against land, against the condition and improvement of, etc, a hendiadys for 'against all improvement of your country's condition'

226 by confessing them, by your confessing them

227 worthily, justly, upon sufficient cause

228 ravel out, disentangle, *we* show the whole web, cp *Ham* iii 4 186, "Make you to *ravel* all this matter out", and *A W* iv 3 84, 5, "The web of our life is of a mingled yarn, good and ill together"

230 upon record, recorded in a document, record, with the accent on the second syllable

231 in so fair a troop, before such a noble audience

232 a lecture of them, a lesson contained in them for the instruction of others If thou wouldst, if you were to read, etc

233 heinous, see note on l 131 article, item particular

234 Containing, comprising, having among its contents

235 And cracking, and concerning the breaking of, etc

236 Mark'd with, etc, refers to "heinous article"

237 look upon, behold, upon, an adverb, as in iii *H VI* ii 3 27, "And *look upon*, as if the tragedy Were play'd in jest"

238 Whilst that myself, while I in my wretchedness harass myself with taunts and gibes, cp *T N* iii 1 130, "Have you not set mine honour at the stake And *basted* it with all the unmuzzled thoughts That tyrannous heart can think", a metaphor from bear-basting

239 with Pilate, like Pilate, see *Matthew*, xxvii 24, "When Pilate saw that he could prevail nothing, but that rather a tumult was made, he took water, and washed his hands before the multitude, saying, I am innocent of the blood of this just person"

240 outward, not really felt you Pilates, you who have acted towards me as Pilate did towards Christ in delivering Him to be crucified.

SCENE I]

symbol of the Christian religion, being used as an emblem of human suffering

242 And water sin, cp *Psalm*, li 2, "Wash me thoroughly from mine iniquity, and cleanse me from my sin"

243 dispatch make haste

246 But they can see, as to prevent their seeing a sort, a pack, set, cp ii *H VII* ii 1 167, "A sort of naughty persons"

250 To undeck king, to strip the body of a king of those marks of greatness that are properly his, pompous, magnificent, not used in the modern sense of affected dignity

251 Made glory base, humbled that which is in itself glorious

252 state, dignity

254 haught, haughty, cp *R III* ii 3 28, "And the queen's sons and brothers haught and proud", insulting, who triumph over my woes, cp *A Y L* iii 5 36, "That you insult, exult, and all at once, Over the wretched"

255 Nor no man's, the emphatic double negative

256, 7 No, not usurp'd Even that name which was given me in baptism is taken away from me, in ceasing to be king, I cease to be Richard, was given, which was given

258 winters, and of course summers, but Richard in his present mood thinks only of what is gloomy

260 mockery king of snow, counterfeit king made only of snow

263 not greatly good, not showing your goodness in any noble way

264 An if my word England, if my command is still current, is accepted as something of standard value, sterling is said to be a contraction of 'Easterling,' the Easterlings or North Germans being the first 'moneymen' in England for An if, sec Abb § 103

265 command straight, command that a mirror be immediately brought

267 his, its

269 while, till, cp i 3 122

270 ere I come to hell, before my time to suffer torment comes

271 Urge, press, insist upon

273 shall be satisfied, with an emphasis on shall

275 writ, the usual form in Shakespeare, Steevens points out that the phrase is from *Psalm*, cxxxix 15, "and in thy book were all my members written" and that's myself, and by "the

279 And make no, etc , without making any, etc

280 Like to prosperity, in that resembling those who were ready to follow me when in prosperity

281 beguile, mislead

282 his, of him , see Abb § 218

284 wink, blink, as being unable to look upon such splendour

285 faced, countenanced, lent approval to

286 out-faced, looked down, put out of countenance, cp 11 *H VI* iv 10 49, "See if thou canst *outface* me with thy looks "

291 my face, i.e. as reflected in the mirror

292 The shadow sorrow, the unsubstantial image of sorrow in your mind, your unreal sorrow, cp above, 11 2 14, "Each substance of a grief hath twenty shadows "

293 The shadow face, the reflected image of your face, cp *K J* 11 498, "The *shadow* of myself form'd in her eye "

296 external laments, outward demonstrations of grief consisting of lamentations, cp *Hamlet* 1 2 86, "These but the trappings and the suits of woe "

299 There, sc in my soul the substance, the reality

300 For thy that, for the bounty of you who, etc , for thy as an antecedent of a relative, see Abb § 218

308 to my flatterer, for my flatterer

317 good, well said conveyers, cheats, thieves, to 'convey' was a cant term for to steal, cp *M W* 1 3 32, 'Nym The good humour is to steal at a minute's rest Pist 'Convey,' the wise it call 'Steal' ' for ' a fico for the phrase "

318 That rise fall, who, like thieves, are so clever in profiting by another's loss

319 set down, fix, appoint

321 pageant, an allusion to the pageants or shows by which kings were entertained on festive occasions

322, 3 The woe's thorn Delius points out that this is a prophetic hint of the wars of the Roses

325 To rid blot? by which we may free the realm of this stain upon its honour, viz., Bolingbroke

328, 9 take intents, bind yourselves by taking the holy sacrament not to divulge the intentions I may reveal to you

ACT V SCENE I

2 To Julius tower according to tradition the Tower of London was built by Julius Caesar, cp *R III* iii 1 69 71, 'Prince Did Julius Caesar build that place, my lord?' Buck He did, my gracious lord, begin that place Which, since succeeding ages have re-edified, ill erected, not 'hardly built,' but 'built to be used for evil purposes, especially the confinement and execution of state prisoners

3 flint bosom, stony hearted bosom

6 Have, subjunctive, *sc* which does not seem probable

7 soft, wait

9 in pity, from pity

11 Ah, thou stand, Ah, you, now only the bare outline of what old Troy once was, the mere skeleton of your former glory, probably with an allusion to the former name of London, Trinovantum, i.e. new Troy Somewhat similar is the imagery in Tennyson's *Union of Sin*, iv 125 5, "Lo, God's likeness—the ground plan—Neither modell'd, glazed, or framed Buss me, thou rough sketch of man, Far too naked to be shamed," though there it is a literal skeleton that is addressed

12 map of honour, image or picture of honoured greatness, but only the picture, not the reality Elsewhere in Shakespeare 'map,' when used in a figurative sense, generally means a real representation, impersonation, e.g. *H IV* iii 1 203, "in thy face I see The map of honour", *T A* iii 2 12, "Thou map of noe, that thou dost talk in signs," said to Lavinia whose tongue has been cut out

13 beauteous inn, stately dwelling place, probably here not a tavern, though to this sense allusion is made in l 15, "an ale house guest"

14 hard-favour'd, harsh featured, see note on iv 1 168

15 When guest? when every common ale house is full of rejoicing

16, 7 Join not end, do not, by your passionate regrets, help the grief which already rives my heart, to end my life too suddenly

19, 20 From which this, from which being awakened, we find that the reality is but this sworn brother, "an expression originally derived from the *fratres jurati*, who in the days of chivalry mutually bound themselves by oath to share each other's fortune" (Dyce, *Gloss*), cp *H V* ii 1 13, "we'll be all three sworn brothers to France", also *M A* i 1 73, and i

21 Necessity, distress, want of everything that makes life worth living

22 Will keep a league, will maintain a peaceful union

23 cloister thee shut yourself up, 'cloister,' from O F *cloistre*, Lat *claustrum*, a cloister, literally an enclosure religious house, convent, house devoted to a life of religious seclusion from the world

24 Our holy lives, we by spending our time in pious thoughts and deeds a new world's crown, a crown of happiness in a new world, *sc* heaven

25 Which down, we by our irreligious lives having lost our earthly crown, stricken, Shakespeare uses 'struck,' 'strucken,' 'stroken,' 'stricken,' etc, as forms of the participle

26 in shape and mind, not only in outward appearance, a change due to 'wasting sorrow,' but also in mind

28 hath he been in thy heart, has he found his way to your heart, and paralyzed that?

31 To be o'erpower'd, at being overpowered, the infinitive used indefinitely pupil-like, as a docile pupil

32 Take, accept

34 which art, you who are

35 if aught but beasts if my subjects had been anything more noble than mere beasts

37 Good sometime queen, good queen as you once were prepare thee hence, prepare to set out hence for France, the verb of motion omitted, as frequently

39 thy last living leave, the last farewell that will be possible to you in life

42 Of woeful betid, of troublous times now long since past, "'betide' from M E prefix *bi* or *be*, and M E *tiden*, to happen from A S *tidan*, to happen — A S *tīd*, a tide, time, hour" (Skeat, *Ety Dict*)

43 to quit their griefs, to requite the sad stories they have told, to 'quit,' in this sense, is very frequent in Shakespeare

44 tale of me, my story, on the pronoun for pronominal adjective, and the introduction of 'of' in the case of an objective genitive, see Abb § 225

45 And send, and *thus* send

46. For why, for indeed, see Abb § 75 the senseless brands, even the burning logs of wood which have no feeling will sympathize, will show sympathy for your sorrows by exuding moisture which will put the fire out: *cd Temv* III 1 19 "Prav

Twill weep for having wearied you " For this transitive use of sympathize, cp *C E* v 1 397, "That by this *sympathized* one day's error Have suffer'd wrong "

47 moving tongue, which melts to tears those who listen to it

48 fire, a dissyllable

49 And some, i.e. of the brands, some coal black, some by becoming coal black in colour ashes an allusion to the practice of strewing ashes on the head as a sign of repentance or great grief, coal black, to the wearing of black garments Delius compares *K J* iv 1 110, 1, "The breath of heaven hath blown his spirit out, And strew'd repentant ashes on his head

53 there is you, measures have been taken, arrangements made, cp *Oth* v 2 72, "No, his mouth is stopp'd Honest Iago hath *taken order* for 't". *R III* iv 2 53, "I will *tale order* for her keeping close "

54 all swift speed all the speed that can possibly be made

55, 6 thou ladder throne, you who have helped Bolingbroke to mount my throne

58 gathering head, becoming ripe, the figure is from a bowl growing to a head, cp *Temp* v 1 1, "Now does my project *gather to a head*", *Ham* iv 4 27, "This is the imposthume of much wealth and peace, That inward breaks " See *H IV* iii 1 57-79, where Henry the Fourth (Bolingbroke) refers to the fulfilment of Richard's prophecy

59 Shall corruption, shall burst forth in a putrid discharge, i.e. shall show itself in an outburst of treasonable violence.

61 helping him to all, seeing that you helped him to all.

62 which know'st, since you know

63 To plant, as a tree, cp above, iv. 1 127 again, on the other hand

64 Being urg'd, on the smallest provocation, ne'er, for an explanation of 'never' where we should use 'ever,' see Abb § 52 Here there is a confusion between 'though you were so little urged that you had never before been urged so little,' and 'though you may never have been so little urged as in this supposed case'

65 To pluck him headlong, to root him up and cast him headlong, headlong "There were some adverbs in *O E*, originally dative feminine singular, ending in -*nga*, *unga*, *lunga*, -*lunga* A few of these, without the dative suffix, exist under the form *lung* or *long*, as *head-long* (*O E heedlinge*), *sideling*, *sidelong*, *darking* (*darklong*), *flatling* and *flatlong*" (Morris, *Hist Orit* etc, § 311)

1 123, "Courtesy itself must *convert* to disdain, if you come in her presence"

67 one or both, *sc* of these "wicked friends"

68 worthy danger, danger well merited

69 and there an end, and that's enough of the subject, *cp Macb* iii 3 80, *Cymb* iii 1 84

74 *unkiss* the oath, cancel by a kiss, as by a kiss it was ratified, for the custom of giving a kiss at marriage, *cp T S* iii 2 180, 1

76 I towards the north, I going towards, etc Properly, we should have had 'me,' *i e* sending me

77 *pin*s the *clime*, afflicts the climate, cold and sickness is to be taken as a single thought, to 'pine' in this transitive sense is not found elsewhere in Shakespeare, though in *V A* 602 we have it with a cognate accusative, "poor birds Do surfeit by the eye and *pine* the maw", *clime*, or climate, (1) a belt of the earth's surface contained between two given parallels of latitude, (2) a region considered with reference to its atmospheric conditions, (3) condition of a region or country in relation to such conditions, especially as they affect human, animal, or vegetable life

78 set forth in pomp, sent on her journey with all pomp and magnificence

80 *Hallowmas*, "the feast of *All Hallows* or All Saints a familiar abbreviation for *All Hallows' Mass* = the mass (or feast) of All Saints here *hallows'* is the genitive plural of *M E halowe*, or *halwe*, a saint" (Skeat, *Ety Dict*), the feast of All Saints is the 1st November, the beginning of winter, the *short'st of day*, the shortest of days, the 21st of December, mid winter

84 *That were policy* To do that would be for Bolingbroke to show some love towards you, but little good policy as regards himself, since then Richard would have facilities for plotting against him, which he would not have if kept in England

86 *So two, woe*, so that two, by weeping together, might make one woe

88 *Better near*, it is better that we should be far from each other than, being near in place, be no nearer meeting, for near, = nearer, *cp* above, iii 2 64, and for *the*, the ablative of the demonstrative, see *Abb* § 94

89 *count sighs*, measure the distance you go by the number of sighs you breathe

90. *So longest moans*, in that way the one who goes farthest

91 Twice groan, twice for every step I take, I will groan and so make the number of my groans equal to yours.

92 piece the way out, lengthen it, cp *Lea*, iii. 6. 2 I will piece out the comfort with what addition I can.

93 wooing, courting

94 Since, wedding it, since in the wedding of it, i.e. when we come to take it for the rest of our lives, as husbands and wives take each other in marriage.

95 and dumbly part and then let us separate without more words

96 mine, my heart

97 'twere no good part, it would be no real kindness

98 To take heart to take upon myself the keeping of your heart, for, by so doing I should be certain to kill it with grief.

99 now I have again, now that you have given me back my own heart

101 We make delay, we make woe proud by this loving lingering, cp iii. 3. 163, Or shall we play the wanton with our woes?

102 the rest say, let the rest be expressed by the sorrow we feel, cp *M* I. ii. 3. 10, "tears exhibit my tongue"

SCENE II

2 When weeping off, when for tears you could not finish your story, the line is parenthetical

3 our two cousins, Richard and Bolingbroke

4 leave, leave off

4. 6 At that head, at the point where I was telling you about the rude, lawless hands throwing dust, etc.

7 as I said, as I was saying

9 Which his know, which seemed to be conscious of the ambitious character of its rider

12. 7 you would Bolingbroke, you would have thought that the windows crowded with people, and the walls covered with tapestry, were speaking, so loud were the shouts of welcome

14 casements, windows, properly the frame forming a window, or part of a window, which opened on hinges attached to the up right side of the frame in which it was fixed, cp *M* *N* *D* iii. 1. 57, "Why, then may you have a casement of the great chamber window where we play, open" their desiring eyes, their eyes

17 *Jesu*, see note on iv 1 93

19 *Bespake*, addressed, the other meaning (the only one now in use) is to order or engage for some future time

21 *still*, continually

22 *the whilst*, during this time, 'whilst' is really 'whiles,' the genitive of 'while,' = time, with an excrescent -t, after s, as in *among's t*, *amid's-t*

24 *well graced*, popular, in favour with the audience, and also well-skilled in his art

25 *idly*, inattentively

26 *Thinking tedious*, thinking that all he utters is but wearisome and idle talk

31 *such gentle sorrow*, such meek signs of sorrow

32 *His face smiles*, smiles and tears all the while striving for mastery in his face

33 *badges, marks*, cp *M A* 1 1 23, "Even so much that joy could not show itself modest enough without a *badge* of butterness," i.e. tears *patience*, patient endurance, a trisyllable

34 *for some strong purpose*, for some great purpose of His own, which is hidden from us

35 *perforce*, of necessity

36 *barbarism itself*, the most savage cruelty

38 *To whose contents*, whose high will sets a limit to our desires, and must be calmly acquiesced in For *bound*, cp *K J* ii 1 442, "O, two such silver currents, when they join, Do glorify the banks that *bound* them in"

40 *Whose state allow*, whose majesty and claim to honour I for ever recognize, *allow*, from "F *allow*er" to let out to hire, to appoint or set down a proportion for expence — Low Lat *allocare*, to admit a thing as proved" (Skeat, *Ety Dict*)

41 *Aumerle that was*, he who was once Aumerle, but is so no longer Steevens quotes Holinshed, "The Dukes of *Aumerle*, Surrey and Exeter, were, by an act of Henry's first parliament, deprived of their dukedoms, but were allowed to retain their earldoms of *Rutland*, Kent, and Huntingdon"

42 *But that is lost*, but that title is forfeited

44 *I am truth*, I in parliament have become surety for his sincerity

45 *fealty*, fidelity; which words are doublets

46, 7. *who are spring* † *who are they that now adorn this*

48 nor I not, the double negative emphasizing the assertion

49 lief, gladly, literally an adjective = dear, beloved

50 bear you well, conduct yourself with prudence

52 hold triumphs? do these tournaments and public shows hold good? i.e. are they to come off justs or jousts from the verb to 'joust' or 'joust' to tilt or encounter on horseback the original sense being merely to meet or approach then to meet or approach in a hostile sense

53 For aught I know, for anything I know to the contrary

56 What seal bosom? the seals to ancient documents were attached by slips of parchment, cp *R J* iv l 56, without, outside

58 No matter it then, if it is nothing, it does not matter who sees it, see, subjunctive

59 I will be satisfied, I am determined to have my doubts satisfied

62 I would not have seen, I would rather should not be seen

63 which for see and I for some reasons mean to see it

64 What should you fear? what can you possibly fear

66 'gainst the triumph day, in anticipation of, preparation for, the day when the revels are to be held

67, 8 Bound to himself bound to? i.e. it is all nonsense talking of a bond for gay apparel, if he had executed such a bond, he would not be carrying it about his person, but would have made it over to the tradesman to whom he was bound

70 I may not, I cannot, see Abb § 310, for 'may with a negative

75 God for his mercy, see note on l 2 40

79 appeach, impeach, "appeach represents an earlier *anpeche* Eng or A Fr form of *enpeche* r—Lat *impedicare*, to catch by the feet, entangle" (Murray *Eng Dict*)

81 I will not peace, I will not hold my peace

82 be content, do not worry yourself

82, 3 it is answer, it is but something for which my life must pay the penalty

85 amazed, confounded, bewildered, see note on l 3 81

86 villain? to the servant who enters with the Duke's boots

89 thine own, i.e. son

90 Have we more sons? The Cl Pr Edd point out that the Duke had at least one more son, Richard, who appears as Earl

91 Is not time? has not the period during which I was capable of bearing children been exhausted by time, *i e* am I not past child bearing?

92 from mine age, from me in my old age

95 fond, foolish

97 here, *i e* whose names are entered in this document

98 interchangeably hands, in mutual compact have signed their names, pledging themselves, etc

99 He shall be none, *i e* of those who will do this deed

100 then what him? then it will matter nothing to him what they do

102 groan'd for him, suffered the pains of child birth in bearing him

104 Thy mind, your meaning, what is in your mind

110 unruly, ungovernable, refusing submission to your husband

111 After, Aumerle! Follow him his horse, one of his horses

112 Spur post, spur your horse to its greatest speed, for post, here an adverb, see note on 115

115 I doubt ride, I feel sure of being able to ride

SCENE III

1 unthrifty, reckless, wild son, afterwards Henry the Fifth, who in reality was at this time only twelve years old

3 If any plague he, the first allusion to that retribution the shadow of which was so constantly over Henry the Fourth and his son

4 I would to God, "to in the phrase 'I would to God' may mean 'near,' 'in the sight of', or there may be a meaning 'I should desire (even carrying my desire) to God' Possibly, however, this phrase may be nothing but a corruption of the more correct idiom, 'Would God that'" (Abb § 190)

5 at London, we should now say 'in London,' as when speaking of countries or very large places

6 For there frequent, for such places are his constant resort, the verb is generally used transitively, and even here the word there is equivalent to 'those places'

7 unrestrained licentious acknowledging no restraint, com

9 beat our watch belabour our watchmen, a pastime carried on to much later times, the watchmen or constables, of former days being few in number and frequently old and incapable as they are represented in *Michael's* 100. *Nothing* passengers those who walk the streets, cp *H II* iii 1 129, 'Or foul felonious thief that fleeces passengers'

10 Which, as to which Dyce and Stanton follow Pope in reading while, wanton, probably for a substantive as in *K J* v 1 70, 'A cockeril liker *wanton*' (*ynb* iv 2 8, 'Bat not so citizen a *wanton*'

11 Takes honour, takes it a point of honour, considers himself bound in honour by the ties of comradeship

13 some two days since, a day or two ago

15 the gallant, ironically

18 wear it as a favour, in tournaments it was customary for the combatants to wear a glove, sleeve, scarf, etc., given them by the lady of their love whose champion they represented themselves to be and with that and wearing that in his helmet

20 As desperate, equally dissolute and reckless is he through both, i.e. his dissoluteness and recklessness

21 some sparks hope, some indications of more hopeful things elder years, increasing years

22 May forth, may bring to a happy birth, cp *J C* v 3 70, 'O error, soon conceived Thou never comest unto a happy birth'

24, 5 What means wildly' what is the reason of our cousin staring and looking so wildly'

27 To have, that I may be allowed to have

32 Unless a pardon, i.e. be promised me

34 If on the first, if the fault was of the former nature, i.e. one of intention only, see Abb 181 how heinous e'er, however heinous

35 To win thy after love, in order to secure your love for the future

36 turn the key, *sc* to lock the door, but also, and more commonly, to unlock, *eg* *Macb* ii 3 2

41 make thee safe, put it out of your power to injure me by killing you, cp *Temp* iii 1 21, "He's *safe* for these three hours"

43 secure, over confident, see note on ii 1 266

44 for love, out of love treason, in calling him "fool hardy"

48 arm us, prepare ourself

50 that my show, which owing to my haste (i.e. to my being out of breath from the haste I have made) prevents my showing, see l 47 For the omission of 'to' before the verb, see Abb § 349

51 pass'd, already pronounced, cp *H V* v 2 82

53 My heart hand, though I signed the paper, my heart is not in conjunction with my handwriting, cp above, v 2 98, "And interchangeably set down their hands"

54 ere thy hand down, before your hand appended your signature

57 to pity him, to show him the mercy promised

61 sheer, clear, the original meaning of the word Steevens quotes *The Faery Queen*, iii 2 44, "Who having viewed in a fountain sheer Her face"

62, 3 From whence himself' from which source is derived this stream that has chosen to flow through muddy channels, and of its own accord has polluted itself, i.e. your son, though sprung from a father of such unsullied honour, has preferred to associate with traitors, and thus, of his own doing, has contaminated himself

64 Thy overflow bad, the excess of virtue in you turns to evil in him, for converts, see v 1 66

65, 6 And thy son And this same abundance of goodness in you shall serve to wipe out this deadly stain in your son who has deviated from the path of honour, the metaphor from a stream is kept up in abundant, from Lat *abundare*, to overflow For digressing, cp *R J* iii 3 127, "Digressing from the valour of a man"

67 So shall bawd, in that way (if you allow my virtue to condone his vice) my virtue will but give facilities for his in indulging in vice

68 And he shame, and he by his shame shall dissipate the honour which I, by my actions, have laid up

69 their gold, the gold which their fathers have scraped together, have acquired by such pains and self denial

70 Mine honour dies, my honour lives only in the death of his dishonour, i.e. until his dishonour is purged away, my honour has no true life

71 Or my lies, or, I may say, I live disgraced in his dishonour

72. in his life, in allowing him to live giving him breath, by

80 'The Beggar and the King,' a reference to the ballad of *King Copland and the Beggar Maid* the story of which is alluded to in *L L L* v 1 66, in *H IV* v 3 106

81 dangerous : intention said with some success

83 whosoever pray : even if it be the mother of the criminal that prays

84 More sins may The result of this forgiveness will probably be that more sins will thrive successful in their objects

85, 6 This fester'd confound If this corrupted part be cut away the rest of the body will remain healthy while this being left untouched will disease the rest of the body

88 Love can, love which does not love its own flesh and blood cannot possibly love another, if he has no love for his own son, you may be sure that his profession of love for yourself is not to be trusted Shakespeare probably had in his mind the passage in *1 John*, iv 20 "If a man say, I love God, and hateth his brother he is a liar for he that loveth not his brother whom he hath seen, how can he love God whom he hath not seen"

89 What dost here? What do you do here? What business have you to be here?

90 Shall rear? Do you hope to give life again to a traitor?

91 liege, see note on *1 1 129*

93 walk upon my knees, i.e. will never rise up but move from place to place upon her knees, instead of her feet, until her son is pardoned

94 And never sees, and never look upon the daylight that beholds those who are happy, i.e. live a life of seclusion, as in a convent

97 Unto, in addition to, joining with her, cp *1 F L* i 2 250, "I should have given him tears unto entreaties" So 'to' very frequently

98 bended be, are bent

102 from his mouth, not from his heart, cp *Macb* v 3 27, "Curses, not loud but deep, mouth honour, breath"

103 would be denied, is willing to be refused

107 false hypocrisy, & in pretending to prefer your safety to his son's life, false, pleonastic

109 out-pray, outweigh in their earnestness

114 An if, see Abb § 103 thy tongue to teach, with the duty imposed upon me of teaching you to speak

116 I never longed, i.e. with such eagerness

request For the *e* sonant in *pardonne*, cp *K J* v 2 104, “*Une le roi*” when I have bank’d their towns” In one of Heywoods Epilogues we have, “But *Une, une le Roy, une la Royne*,” where the final *e* must be sonant twice at all events Abbott (§ 489) gives other instances

120 teach pardon, *ie* the word ‘pardon’ (in the French sense), to destroy pardon (in the English sense)

121 sour, sour tempered, morose

122 That set’st word’ who oppose the word pardon (in English) against itself (in French)

123 as ’tis current, in the sense which it bears

124 chopping, changing, *ie* the meaning which the word bears in English, cp the phrase ‘*chopping and changing*,’ and ‘the wind *chops*,’ *ie* veers round to another point In its transitive sense the word is most common in the phrase to ‘chop logic,’ *ie* to exchange logical arguments and terms, to reason argumentatively

125 set thy tongue there, *ie* in your eye, give it the same inclination that your eye has

128 to rehearse, to recite literally to repeat (*eg* a part, as actors do)

131 as God me, as I trust God will pardon me

132 O happy knee’ O blessed advantage gained by, etc

133 Yet fear, my fear makes me still sick

134 twain, two persons, see note on i 1 50

135 With all my heart, from the bottom of my heart

137 for, as regards, trusty, ironically

138 consorted crew, traitors who have thrown in their lot to gether, ‘crew’ when not used of a ship’s company has generally a contemptuous sense

139 at the heels, closely, cp *R III* iv 1 40, “Death and destruction dog thee *at the heels*”

140 help powers, help to arrange for the despatch of separate armed forces, several, like ‘separate,’ ultimately comes from the Lat *separare*, we have the singular ‘power’ in the same sense in ii 2. 124, iii 2 63

143. But I will have them, without my getting them into my hands

145 and prove you true, and may you prove loyal

146 Came . new, *ie* I hope to change your old nature to a new one . to make you give up such practices as those you have

SCENE IV

- 1 Didst thou spake, for the redundant object, see *Abr* § 414
- 2 will rid, who will rid
- 3 Was it not so was it not that he said
- 5 urged it, dwelt touch'd upon it
- 7 wistly, wistfully v. a in earnest and serious look. According to Skeat, wistly is probably a corruption of the M. E. *wistly* = certainly, verily, exactly, whence the senses of 'attentively' etc., may have arisen, whilst 'wistfully' is probably a corruption of 'wisefully'.
- 9 As who should say as one who should say, cp *Marb* iii 6 42 *M. V* i 2 45, Shakespeare profoundly understood *who* in this whom as a relative, but it was also used as = any one, see *Abr* § 277
- 9 divorce heart free my heart from this terror
- 11 rid, make away with, cp *Temp* i 2 364, 'The red plague rid you'

SCENE V

- 1, 2 I have world, I have been endeavouring to work out a comparison between my prison and the world in general
- 3 for because, a pleonasm common in Shakespeare's day
- 5 hammer it out, manage it in some way or other, whatever trouble it may cost me
- 6 I'll prove, I will make, my brain shall by my efforts prove
- 7 these two beget these two shall beget
- 8 still breeding, continually breeding, cp *Temp* iii 3 64, "Kill the still closing waters"
- 9 people, shall people this little world, i.e. of himself, his 'microcosm,' as in *Cor* ii 1 68
- 10 In humours world, with thoughts as capricious, dissatisfied, as are the, etc
- 13 scruples, obstacles, difficulties
- 13 14 and do set word, and oppose one text of Holy Writ against another
- 15 'Come, little ones' See *Mark*, x 14, "Suffer the little children to come unto me, and forbid them not, for of such is

16, 7 'It is eye' See *Mattheu*, xix 24, "And again I say unto you, It is easier for a camel to go through the eye of a needle, than for a rich man to enter into the kingdom of God" Here Richard says that the words of the two texts are opposed to each other, the postern, literally a 'back gate,' and so a small one, needle's, to be scanned, if not written, 'neelds,' as in *M N D* iii 2 204, *K J v* 2 157 Cp also *K J v* 4 11, "Unthread the rude eye of rebellion"

18, 9 Thoughts wonders, ambitious thoughts conceive improbable wonders, for the insertion of the superfluous pronoun, see Abb § 243 how these, etc, for instance, how these, etc

21 my ragged prison walls, these rough walls of my prison, in apposition with, and explanatory of, this hard world Cp ii *H IV*, *Induction*, 35, "And this worm eaten hold of ragged stone"

22 And, pride, and, since they (the nails) are unable to do so, they (the thoughts) die unrepentant in their sin of pride

23 content, contentment

25 Nor shall not, the double negative adding emphasis silly, simple

26 refuge their shame, find an excuse for their disgrace, in their disgrace take refuge in the thought that, etc

27 have, *sc* sat

28 a kind of ease, a sort of relief

29, 30 Bearing like In their comparison saddling their own misfortunes on the back, etc, and so relieving themselves

34 And so I am, used in a double sense (1) and that I at once become in imagination, (2) and that is really the case with me

36 Then again, *sc* in imagination by and by, a short while after

38 And straight am nothing, and immediately I am (in imagination, as well as in reality) nothing

39 but man, merely a mortal man

41 With being nothing, by dying

42 keep time, do not play out of time

43 When time is broke, when (musical) time is not kept, for broke, see Abb § 343 proportion, the Cl Pr Edd compare *R J* ii. 4. 22, "He fights as you sing prick song, *Keeps time*, distance, and *proportion*"

44 in the music, as regards the music

45-8 And here broke And here, in this prison, I have that delicate sense of hearing which enables me to find fault with

out in regard to the harmony of my state when I was king had not that nice sense which could recognize the discord that was in my kingdom, to hear my true time broke, to perceive the breaking of that time which should have been properly kept

50 his numbering clock its clock which tells the hour

51 My thoughts are minutes, my thoughts are the minutes that go to make up the hour

51, 2 and with sighs watch, the sighs accompanying my thoughts are as the ticking of a pendulum, and, as they are drawn, convey to my eyes, that represent the dial, the progress of the watch they keep Schmidt explains watches as "the marks of the minutes on a dial plate", but these could hardly be said to be "jarred on" unless the dial was a movable one with a fixed hand, the word seems rather to allude to the record of time by the old watchmen For jar (p. II 1 1 2 43, I love thee not a jar o' the clock behind What lady she her lord

53 a dial's point, the hand of a clock or watch

54 still, ever

55 sir, a word often used in soliloquy when the speaker addresses himself as audience

57 the bell, upon which the hour is struck in clocks sighs, going with minutes, tears, with times, groans, with hours This series of fanciful similes is thus explained by Henley "It should be recollected that there are three ways in which a clock notices the progress of time viz, by the vibration of the pendulum the index on the dial, and the striking of the hour To these the king, in his compassion, severally alludes, his sighs corresponding to the jarring of the pendulum, which at the time that it watches or numbers the seconds, marks also their progress in minutes on the dial or outward watch, to which the king compares his eyes, and the want of figures is supplied by a succession of tears, or (to use an expression of Milton) *minute drops* his finger, by as regularly wiping these away, performs the office of the dial's point —his clamorous groans are the sounds that tell the hour"

58 Runs joy, hurries on bringing joy to Bolingbroke, not to me, i. e. the faster my time goes, the better pleased is Bolingbroke

60 his Jack o' the clock, an automaton, outside the clocks of former days, holding a mallet in its hand with which, by the action of the machinery, it is made to strike the bell The figure is sometimes to be seen nowadays in imitations of the antique

62 For though wits Bucknill, *The Mad Folk of Shakespeare*, pp 223, 4, refers to 1 *Samuel*, xvi, and 11 *Kings*, iii, as the earliest record of the effect of music upon madmen, and speaks of its use in modern times as being sometimes beneficial, though the effects are rarely lasting for help, see Abb § 343

63 In me it seems, judging from my own experience wise men, men in possession of their wits

64 his heart, the heart of him

66 Is a strange world, is a strange ornament for any one to wear in this world which so universally hates me, brooch, an ornament worn in the hat, scarf, etc Cp Jonson, *The Poetaster*, 1 1, "honour's a good brooch to wear in a man's hat at all times"

67 Thanks, noble peer, said in good humoured irony, so in 1 *H IV* ii 4 14, 5, *Hostess* "O Jesu, my lord the prince" *Prince* How now, my lady the hostess'

68 The cheapest dear, said with a pun on the words "royal," a coin worth ten shillings, and a "noble," worth six shillings and eightpence, a 'groat' was fourpence, hence the difference between the 'noble' and the 'royal' was ten groats, and says Richard, the cheaper of the two of them, the 'noble,' = twenty groats, is not worth more than half that sum, i.e. that he and the groom have greatly come down in the world Tollet quotes the joke made by Queen Elizabeth which Shakespeare has here borrowed "Mr John Blower, in a sermon before her majesty, first said, 'My royal Queen,' and a little after, 'My noble Queen' Upon which says the Queen, 'What, am I ten groats worse than I was'" The same pun occurs in 1 *H IV* ii 4 317, "*Host* There is a nobleman of the court at door who would speak with you *Prince* Give him as much as will make him a royal man"

69 What art thou' for 'what' where we should use 'who,' see Abb § 254

70 That sad dog, that sullen-looking fellow

71 to make misfortune live, i.e. by keeping me alive

76 yearn'd, grieved, from A S *yrman*, to grieve, 'yearn' = to desire strongly, being from A S *gyrnan*, to be desirous For this transitive sense, cp *M W* iii 5 45, and for the impersonal use, *H V* iv 3 26

78 roan Barbary, the roan-coloured (reddish-brown) horse named Barbary Steevens thinks this story of Roan Barbary was probably an invention of Shakespeare's

80 dress'd, groomed.

82. How hum? how did the horse bear him?

57 Would he not stumble ? w^h he not ready to stumble ?

58 Since fall, i.e. he ought to have done so, for he must have a fall

90 Forgiveness I ask your forgiveness rail on abuse

94 galled as a horse is by the spur jouncing ' may mean *hard riding*, as Cotgrave explains *jaunter*, 'To stir a horse in the stable till he sweat withal' *oues out to it* 'Stuntion'

95 give place, make room here is no longer stay, you must not stay here any longer

96 tis time away i.e. or else you will be so treated by those here, who all hate me

97 What my say Cp above, v 1 102, "the rest let sorrow say"

98 to fall to, to begin your meal

99 Taste, in old days for fear of poison being mixed with the food or drink, it was customary for the dishes etc. set before a sovereign to be tasted in his presence by a servant appointed for the purpose, cp *K J* v 6 25 "who did taste to him?" wont accustomed

103 is stale, is vapid, has lost all taste to me

105 what means assault ? what does death mean by assaulting me in this barbarous way ? i.e. what do you mean by assaulting me in this murderous fashion ?

106 thy death's instrument, the instrument of your death

109 staggers, causes to totter, this transitive sense is used figuratively in *H VIII* ii 4 112

112 gross, heavy, a contrast to the lightness of the spirit

115 spill'd, i.e. quenched the valour and spilt the blood

116 did well, &c. in killing him

118 the rest, the bodies of those slain by the king

SCENE VI

3 Cicester, written in full 'Cirencester,' but pronounced 'Cicester'

6 state, majesty

8 Salisbury, Spencer, so the folios, in agreement with Holinshed The first quarto gives "Oxford, Salisbury, Blunt," etc.

9 taking, capture

10 At large discoursed, set forth fully in all particulars

12 And to gains, and will reward you adequately to your

15 **consorted**, see note on v 3 138

18 **wot**, know

22 **to abide**, to suffer, more properly 'aby,' from M E *abyen*, A S *abigian*, to pay for, 'abide,' = wait for, being from A S *abidan*

25 **some reverend room**, some religious place

26 **More hast**, other than that you already possess, joy, enjoy cp II *H VI* iv 9 1, "Was ever king that *joy'd* an earthly throne?"

27 **So as strife**, provided you live peacefully, you may die without molestation

31 **Thy buried fear**, him who when living was dreaded by you, but who now is in his coffin, cp v 4 2

34 **6 for thou land**, for by your murderous hand you have done a deed which will bring reproach upon, etc

37 **From deed**, it was in accordance with your own words that I did this deed

40 **him murdered**, him who has been murdered

41 **for thy labour**, as a reward for your pains

46 **That blood grow**, that I should need to be watered by the blood of my enemies in order to prosper

47 **that, that which**

48 **sullen**, gloomy **incontinent**, immediately, cp *Oth* iv 3 12, "He says he will return *incontinent*"

49 **to the Holy Land**, i e on a crusade, in the hope of atoning for his crime in having desired Richard's death

INDEX TO THE NOTES

A

Abide, v 6 22
 Achieved, n 1 254
 Advice, 1 3 233
 Advised, 1 3 188
 Affects (sb), 1 4 30
 Aggravate 1 1 43
 Allow v 2 40
 Along, 1 3 199
 Amazing 1 3 81
 Annoyance, m 2 16
 Antic, m 2 162
 Appeach, v 2 79
 Appeal, 1 1 4, 27
 Approve, 1 2 112
 Apricocks, m 4 29
 Arbitrate, 1 1 200
 Argument, 1 1 12
 Attach, n 3 156
 Attainder, iv 1 24
 Atone, 1 1 202
 Attorneys general, n 1 203

B

Baffle, 1 1 170
 Balm, m 2 55
 Band, 1 1 2
 Barbed, m 3 117
 Bay, n 3 128
 Bay-trees n 4 8

Bead-ven, m 2 116
 Bel olding, iv 1 160
 Be-hrew, m 2 204
 Betid, v 1 42
 Bias, m 4 7
 Bills, m 2 119
 Bonnet, 1 4 31
 Boots (v), 1 174
 Bowls, m 4 1

C

Caitiff, 1 2 53
 Carver, n 3 144
 Casements, v 2 14
 Caterpillars, n 3 166
 Charters, blank 1 4 48
 Chopping, v 3 124
 Clap, m 2 114
 Cloister (vb), v 1 23
 Companions, v 3 7
 Compassionate, 1 3 174
 Complexion, m 2 194
 Complices, n 3 165
 Composition n 1 73
 Concert, n 3 33
 Conduct, iv 1 157
 Converts (intrs vb), v 1 65
 Conveyers, iv 1 317
 Cormorant, n 1 38
 Cousin 1 1 28
 Cozening, n 2 69
 Cozening 1 3 163

D

Danger, i 1 13
 Decivable, ii 3 84
 Defend, i 3 18
 Depose, i 3 30
 Determinate, i 3 150
 Dispark'd, iii 1 23
 Disposition, ii 2 4

E

Ear (vb), iii 2 212
 English feasts, i 3 67
 Entertain, iii 2 4
 Envy, i 2, 21
 Exactly, i 1 140
 Expedience, ii 1 287
 Expedient, i 4 39

F

Fall (trs vb), iii 4 104
 Fantastic, i 3 299
 Fare (vb) ii 3 23
 Favours, iv 1 168
 Foil, i 3 265
 Forfend, iv 1 129
 Fretted, iii 3 167

G

Gage, i 1 69
 Gathering head, v 1 58
 Glose, ii 1 12
 Gnarling, i 3 292
 Gored, i 3 60

H

Hallowmas, v 1 80
 Hardly, ii 4 2
 Haught, iv 1 254,
 Headlong, v 1 65

I

Impeach, i 1 170
 Impress, iii 1 25
 Imp out, ii 1 292
 Incontinent, v 6 48
 Indifferent, ii 3 116
 Inhabitable, i 1 65
 Inherit, ii 1 83
 Inward, ii 2 11

J

Jack o'-the clock, v 5 60
 Jar, v 5 51
 Jauncing, v 5 94
 Jewels, i 3 270
 Jewry, ii 1 55
 Journeyman, i 3 274
 Julius' tower, v 1 2

K

Kerns, ii 1 156
 Knave, ii 2 96
 Knots, iii 4 46

L

Letters patents, ii 1 202
 Liege, i 1 7
 Lineaments, iii 1 9
 Livery, ii 1 204
 Lodge, iii 3 162

M

Maid pale, iii 3 98
 Manage, i 4 39, iii 3 179
 Manors, iv 1 212
 Map, v 1 12
 Measure (sb), i 3 291
 Measure (vb), iii 2 122
 Merit i 2 156

Model, m 2 153
Motive 1 1 193

N

Neighbour (adj), 1 1 119
Noble, v 5 68
Noisome, m 4 38

O

Odds, m 4 89

P

Pageant, iv 1 321
Pale (sb), m 4 40
Palmer's m 3 151
Parasite, n 2 70
Paile 1 1 192
Partial, 1 3 241
Peering, n 1 271
Pelican, n 1 126
Pelting, n 1 60
Perspectives, n 1 18
Peruse, m 3 53
Pill'd, n 1 246
Pines (trs vb), v 1 77
Pitch 1 1 109
Plague (vb), m 1 134
Portcullis'd, 1 3 167
Power, n 2 46
Precedent, n 1 130
Presence, the, 1 3 289
Press'd, m 2 58
Proof, 1 3 73
Prosecute, n 1 244
Purchase, 1 3 282

Q

R

Raged n 1 70
Ragel, m 2 39
Recreant 1 1 144
Rejoice 1 2 142
Remember 1 2 269
Repair, n 1 216
Repeal, n 2 49
Reversion 1 4 35
Roundly, n 1 120
Rounds, m 2 161
Royalties, n 1 190
Ruth, m 4 105

S

Safeguard (vb), 1 2 35
Securely, n 1 266
Set, n 1 57
Shadow, iv 1 292
Sheer, v 3 61
Shrewd m 2 69
Signories, m 1 22
Signs of war, n 2 74
Sluiced out, 1 1 103
Spent, 1 1 108
Stand out 1 4 38
Sterling, iv 1 264
Stream (trs vb), iv 1 94
Suggest, 1 1 101
Sullen, 1 3 227
Supplant, n 1 156
Sworn brother, v 3 61
Sympathy, iv 1 33

T

Tall, n 1 286
Task (vb), iv 1 52
Temper, iv 1 29
Tender (vb), 1 1 32
Testament, m 3 94
Tidings, n 1 272
Tide, m 3 156

Triumphs, v 2 52
 Twain, i 1 50

U

Uncontroll'd, i 3 90
 Undeaf, ii 1 16
 Underbearing, i 4 29
 Unhappied, iii 1 10

V

Venom (adj), ii 1 19

W

Warder, i 3 117
 Watch, v 3 9
 Waxen coat, i 3 75
 Wayward, ii 1 142
 Wistly, v 4 7
 Witnessing, ii 2 22
 Wot, ii 1 250

Y

Yearn'd, v 5 76

APPENDIX.

BY THOS CARTWRIGHT, B A , B Sc ,

Author of Appendices to " King Lear," " King Henry VIII ," etc.

I Short Sketch of the Elizabethan Drama.

At the time of the accession of Elizabeth, the drama for the most part consisted of Moralities or Allegorical Plays

The Morality was a representation in which some Lesson of duty was taught by personified qualities, such as Mercy, Justice, Temperance, and Riches

The various characters were brought together in a rude kind of plot, the outcome of which was the triumph of Virtue or the establishment of some moral principle Satan was always introduced, and the humorous element was supplied by his torments at the hands of the Vice—a low jocular buffoon, who kept the audience in a "fit of mirth" *The Cradle of Security* and *Hit the Nail on the Head* are two examples of popular Moralities The Morality finally died out about the end of Elizabeth's reign.

The Revival of Learning was in great part the cause of the downfall of the Morality play The old Greek and Roman plays became more known, and writers of the drama took these plays as their model

At first the Virtues and Vices of the Morality gave way to characters from classical mythology. The plot too, instead of treating of Christian morals, was taken from the same source This kind of drama was very fashionable at court throughout the reign of Elizabeth The play generally abounded with compliments to the Queen, or to the nobles who were the patrons of the players

The Interludes of John Heywood form a kind of connecting link between the Morality and the regular drama. These plays were written for representation at court during the reign of Henry VIII They were short humorous plays and resembled in many respects our modern Farce The characters were

mostly drawn from real life, although the 'Vice' of the Morality play was still retained

The Reformation hastened the change from the Morality play to the modern drama. The Interludes and Moralities were used to support either the Catholic or the Protestant side, and the plays were full of sneer, jest, and satire, which the opposing sides hurled fiercely at each other.

According to most authorities, the first stage of the regular drama begins with the first English comedy, *Ralph Roister Doister*. This play was written by Nicholas Udall, master of Eton, and although performed before 1551, it was not published till 1566. The plot is woven round the adventures of a foolish town fop, and the manners represented are those of the middle class of the period. The picture given in this play of London citizen life in the sixteenth century is extremely interesting and instructive. The earliest known English tragedy is *Gorboduc, or Ferrex and Porrex*. It was written by Sackville and Norton and was first represented in 1562. The plot was taken from an ancient British legend like *King Lear*, but the piece was too heavy and solemn for the taste of the audience. In 1564, Richard Edwards combined tragedy and comedy in *Damon and Pythias*. The plot was taken from classical mythology. In all probability it was this play that was performed before the Queen at Whitehall during the Christmas festivities, 1564-65. This play was well received by the public.

The success of these plays quickly led to the production of a large number of dramas. They were, for the most part, written by men who were well acquainted with the classical drama, and who chose not only the romances of Italy and Spain for their plots, but also narratives from the Chronicle Histories of England. Among the dramatists who immediately preceded Shakespeare and who wrote during what has been termed the Second Stage of the drama, the most noted were Marlowe, Peele, Greene, Nash, and Lodge. They had all received a University education, and were all writing for the London stage between the years 1585 and 1593.

Christopher Marlowe was born at Canterbury in 1564. He received his education at the King's School of his native city and at Corpus Christi College, Cambridge. Till 1587 the plays for the public had been written in prose and rime, but in this year Marlowe produced his play of *Tamburlaine the Great* in blank verse. In his *Life and Death of Dr Faustus*, *The Jew of Malta*, and *Edward II*, Marlowe developed blank verse and caused its general adoption by writers of dramatic poetry. In this manner, Marlowe may be said in some degree to have prepared the way for the mighty creations of Shakespeare.

Of the rest of the dramatists mentioned above, Robert Greene generally ranks next below Marlowe. He was born at Norwich

in 1560 and received his education at Cambridge. More than forty works are ascribed to his pen. His chief plays were *Alphonso*, *Orlando Furioso*, *Friar Bacon*, and *The Scottish Historie of James IV*. In Greene's pamphlet, *A Groat's worth of Wit bought with a Million of Repentance*, written when its author was on his death bed, we find the first certain reference to Shakespeare. Greene warns three of his fellow authors, who have been identified with Marlowe, Peele and Nash (or Lodge) against players: "Yes, trust them not for there is an upstart Crow, beautified with our feathers, that with his *tiger's heart* wrapt in a *player's hide*, supposes he is as well able to bombast out a blank verse as the best of you and being an absolute *Johannes factorum*, is in his own conceit the only Shake scene in a country." This pamphlet was published by Greene's friend, Henry Chettle. Some three months later, in December, 1592, Chettle himself published a pamphlet entitled *Kind Hart's Dream*. In it he offered a liberal apology to Shakespeare, for making public Greene's words. He says "I am as sorry as if the original fault had been my fault, because myself have seen his (Shakespeare's) demeanour no less civil, than he excellent in the quality he professes, besides, divers of worship have reported his uprightness of dealing, which argues his honesty, and his facetious grace in writing, that approves his art."

William Shakespeare was born at Stratford-on-Avon, Warwickshire, in April, 1564. His father, John Shakespeare, who married in 1557, Mary Arden, the daughter of his landlord, was a prosperous burgess of Stratford. William received his education at the Free Grammar School of his native town. In consequence of his father's difficulties, when he was only thirteen years of age, he was taken from school either to assist in business or to earn a living in some way for himself. What his employment was, or how he spent his time during the period between his leaving school and his removal to London, cannot be answered with certainty. The story told by Rowe of the deer stealing in Charlecote woods is without proof, but it is most probable that the early period of Shakespeare's manhood was wild and riotous. When he was nineteen years of age he married Anne Hathaway, who was some eight years older than himself. Whether the marriage proved a happy one or the reverse is a matter of conjecture. They had three children—Susanna, baptized May 26, 1583, and twins, Judith and Hamnet, born in February, 1585. Shakespeare left Stratford and came to London in 1586 or 1587. Here he met with Marlowe and Greene, and became an actor and playwright. How he lived when he first arrived in London we do not know; but it is certain he soon became prosperous. In 1589 he held a share in the Blackfriars Theatre, and not many years later he became a part-owner of the Globe Theatre. During these early years in London, besides acting, he did work

for the stage by touching up old plays and writing new ones. The words of Greene, mentioned above, show clearly that in 1592 Shakespeare's fame as an author had roused jealous feelings in some of the dramatists of the day.

Of Shakespeare as an actor we know but little. The Ghost in *Hamlet*, and Adam in *As You Like It*, are said to have been his favourite parts. He was a member of the Lord Chamberlain's company, and appeared before the Queen on more than one occasion.

He finally retired to his native town in 1612. During the twenty six years he had spent in London, he had become wealthy, famous, and honoured by the special favour of the Queen. He never forgot Stratford. Every year of his stay in London, he is said to have paid a visit to his family. He had bought a house—New Place—at Stratford in 1597, and here he spent the remaining years of his life. He died on April 23, 1616, his fifty second birthday.

Of the thirty six plays which Shakespeare has given to the world, *Macbeth*, *King Lear*, *Romeo and Juliet*, *Hamlet*, and *Othello* are generally considered as the greatest of the tragedies, *As You Like It*, *A Midsummer-Night's Dream*, and *The Merchant of Venice*, as the finest comedies, and *Coriolanus*, *Richard III*, and *Julius Caesar* as the most prominent of the historical plays.

Second only to Shakespeare in the drama of this period stands Ben Jonson. This dramatist was born in 1574. After receiving some education at Westminster School, he became a soldier, and fought in the Netherlands. On his return to England, he entered St John's College, Cambridge, ~~where he remained but for a short time.~~ He produced forty six plays. Of these the best known is the still acted comedy, *Every Man in his Humour*. The majority of his productions were masques, or short pieces for representation at court. In these the words held a secondary place to the music, dumb show, and dresses. *Cataline* and *Sejanus* are Jonson's principal tragedies, and, besides the comedy mentioned above, he wrote *The Alchemist*, and *Volpone*, or *The Fox*.

Many dramatists wrote towards the end of this period. Among these the names of Beaumont and Fletcher, Massinger, John Ford, and John Webster stand out prominently. The chief plays of Beaumont and Fletcher are *Philaster*, *The Maid's Tragedy*, *King and No King*. Fletcher alone wrote, among other plays, *The Faithful Shepherdess*—a play remarkable for its beautiful poetry. Massinger produced thirty-seven plays, the best known being *The New Way to Pay Old Debts*. John Ford's *Perkin Warbeck* has been described as "the best historical drama after Shakespeare." His other best-known plays are *The Broken Heart* and *Love's Sacrifice*. John Webster is best known as the author of a famous tragedy, *The Duchess of Malfi*.

II Representation of a Play

At the commencement of Elizabeth's reign the general public had opportunities of witnessing plays performed on the stage erected either in the open air or in some inn yard. In the year 1576 three theatres were set up in London. The servants of the Earl of Leicester built their theatre at Blackfriars, while "The Theatre" and "The Curtain" were erected in Shoreditch fields.

The greater part of the interior of the above mentioned theatres was open to the weather, only the stage and a portion of the gallery being covered. The stage consisted of a bare room, the walls of which were covered with tapestry. When a tragedy was to be enacted, the tapestry was often removed and a covering of black substituted. Running along the back of the stage, at a height of from eight to ten feet above the floor was a kind of gallery. This served for a variety of purposes. On it, those actors who were supposed to speak from upper windows, towers, mountain sides, or any elevated place, took their stand. There was no movable scenery. Sometimes a change of scene was represented by the introduction of some suggestive article of stage furniture. Thus, for example, a bough of a tree was brought on to represent a forest; a cardboard imitation of a rock served for a mountainous place, or for the pebbly beach of the sea shore. Wooden imitations of horses and towers were also introduced. But the most common way of indicating a change of scene was by hanging out a board bearing in large letters the name of the place of action.

A flag was unfurled on the roof of a theatre when a performance was about to be given.

Usually the play commenced at three o'clock, and lasted two or three hours. The pit or "yard" of the theatre was occupied by the lower classes, who had to stand during the whole performance. The nobility took their seats either in the boxes or on the rush strewn stage. A flourish of trumpets was the signal that the play was about to commence. When the trumpets had sounded a third time, a figure clothed in a long black robe came forward and recited the prologue. The curtain in front of the stage then divided and the play began.

The actors appeared in costumes which, though sometimes costly, were not always in accordance with the time and place demanded by the play. They acted their parts in masks and wigs, and the female characters were always filled by boys or smooth-faced young men.

Between the acts there was dancing and singing, and sometimes at the close the clown would perform a jig to send the audience home in good humour. Finally, the actors assembled on the stage, knelt down, and offered up a prayer for the

III. Classification of Shakespeare's Plays, with date of each play (ascertained or conjectured), according to Professor Dowden

COMEDIES

Love's Labour's Lost	1590
Comedy of Errors	1591
Two Gentlemen of Verona	1592-93
Midsummer-Night's Dream	1593-94.
Merchant of Venice	1596
Taming of the Shrew	'1597
Merry Wives of Windsor	'1598
Much Ado about Nothing	1598
As You Like It	1599
Twelfth Night	1600-1601
All's Well that Ends Well	'1601-1602
Measure for Measure	1603
Troilus and Cressida	'1603, revised, '1607.
Tempest	1610
Winter's Tale	1610-11.

HISTORIES.

1 Henry VI.	1590-91
2 and 3 Henry VI.	1591-92.
Richard III	1593
<i>Richard II</i>	1594.
King John	1595
1 and 2 Henry IV	1597-98
Henry V	1599
Henry VIII	1612-13

TRAGEDIES

Titus Andronicus	1588-90
Romeo and Juliet	'1591, 1596-97.
Julius Caesar	1601
Hamlet	1602
Othello	1604
Lear	1605
Macbeth	1606
Antony and Cleopatra.	1607.
Coriolanus	1608
Timon.	1607-1608
Pericles.	1608
Cymbeline	1609

IV Analysis of the Play

See Introduction

V Sketches of the Chief Characters

Richard and Bolingbroke See Introduction, pp xxi and xxi, and note the following

"The part of Richard gives the chief interest to the plot. His folly, his vices, his misfortunes, his reluctance to part with his crown, his fear to keep it, his weak and womanish regrets, his starting tears, his fits of hectic passion, his considered majesty, pass in succession before us and make a picture as natural as it is affecting"—Hazlitt

"The character of Bolingbroke, afterwards Henry IV, is drawn with a masterly hand—patient for occasion, and then steadily availing himself of it, seeing his advantage afar off, but only seizing on it when he has it within his reach, humble, crafty, bold and aspiring, encroaching by regular but slow degrees, building power with opinion, and cementing opinion by power"—Hazlitt

"Richard is so steeped in voluptuous habits that he must needs be a voluptuary even in his sorrow, and make a luxury of woe itself, pleasure has so thoroughly mastered his spirit, that he cannot think of bearing pain as a duty or an honour, but merely as a license for the pleasure of maudlin self compassion; so he hangs over his griefs, hugs them, nurses them, buries himself in them, as if the sweet agony thereof were to him a glad refuge from the stings of self reproach, or a clear release from the exercise of manly thought"—Hudson, *Shakespeare, his Life, Art, and Character*, II 55

"There is in Richard a constant overflow of emotions from a total incapability of controlling them, and thence a waste of that energy which should have been reserved for actions, in the passion and effort of mere resolves and menaces. The consequence is moral exhaustion, and rapid alternations of unmanly despair and ungrounded hope—every feeling being abandoned for its direct opposite upon the pressure of external accident"—Coleridge, *Notes and Lectures upon Shakespeare*, quoted by Mr Rolfe

"Cold and considerate compared to the fanciful, a profound statesman compared to the romanticist and the poet, a quick horseman spurring the heavy overburdened Richard, bearing the misfortune of banishment with manly composure, and easing his nature by immediate search for redress, whilst Richard at the mere approach of misfortune immediately sinks, this man appears

"All Bolingbroke's strength and craft are his own His is a resolute gaze which sees his object afar off, and he has persistency and energy of will to carry him forward without faltering He is not cruel, but shrinks from no deed that is needful to his purpose because the deed is cruel His faculties are strong and well-knit There is no finer contrast in Shakespeare's historical plays than that between the figures of the formidable king of deeds and the romantic king of hectic feelings and brilliant words"—Professor Dowden, *Shakespeare Primer*, page 89

The Queen Richard's wife is depicted by Shakespeare as a true loving woman, whose thoughts are all for the King, hence her anxiety about him when absent and her grief when she learns of his misfortune and her willingness to share his imprisonment.

"Banish us both and send the King with me,"

she says, and, later, this being refused, she begs

"Then whither he goes, thither let me go"

Moreover she is less disposed than he to kiss the rod, hence her questioning reproach

"Wilt thou, pupil-like,
Take thy correction mildly, kiss the rod,
And fawn on rage with base humility
Which art a lion and a king of beasts?"

Altogether the character of the Queen, lightly as it is sketched, suggests a woman of affection, sense, and determination

The Duke of York. The incidents of importance in Richard II as yielding insight into the character of York are (1) his expostulation with the King for seizing the estates of Bolingbroke This argues a just and sagacious mind But the fact that the protest does not continue after its expression points to a feeble time serving trait that mars this apparent robustness and honesty, (2) his regency, which points to a loyalty that was sincere, but which attached itself rather to the office than to the person of the King, (3) his vacillation in dealing with the invasion of Bolingbroke, whom he first condemns and then so far condones as to declare himself neuter, (4) his conduct in respect to his son Aumerle's treason, where his fervent loyalty to the throne shows how completely he has attached himself to the new king, and also how sincere his attachment is Here again, however, there are signs of vacillation strongly marked

John o' Gaunt The loyalty, patriotism, and fatherly affection of Gaunt are very prominently portrayed by Shakespeare The scene where the statesman's head wars against the father's heart is one of great pathos out of which Gaunt stands forth a man of

to the King when on his death bed are as sincere as they are well timed and deserved. His fervent love of country as expressed in the following lines

“This royal throne of kings, this sceptred isle,
This earth of majesty, this seat of Mars,
This other Eden, demi-paradise

This blessed plot, this earth, this realm, this England is inspiring to an eminent degree, whilst the whole of his thoughts and actions seem to be those of a man whose race is run and who sees visions and dreams dreams. A man then of lofty patriotism, of warm affection, and of unswerving, yet by no means blind loyalty is what we see in Shakespeare's John of Gaunt

Aumerle is a man of little principle and of less loyalty. He is the first to support and the first to plot against Bolingbroke. His cowardice is apparent in his abject appeal to the King's mercy and in his desertion of his fellow conspirators. There is nothing in his character to suggest the nobility with which Shakespeare afterwards credits him in Henry V. where he fights bravely and dies at Agincourt.

Thomas Mowbray appears but little, and that little suggests either a consummate actor or a high minded man, inasmuch as either he lied to shield the King in respect to Gloucester's death or he bore himself with dignity and forbearance against a foul accusation. That Bolingbroke contemplated his recall from banishment and the manner of his death, suggest rather the latter than the former alternative.

Northumberland is apparently a “haughty insulting man, who supports Bolingbroke out of regard for his order rather than from devotion to his person. In the deposition scene he plays the contemptible part of striving to humiliate a fallen man, so much so that even Bolingbroke is moved to interpose.

Carlisle wins our admiration by his sturdy devotion to the deposed King and by his plucky condemnation of the tactics, successful though they have been, of the usurper. That this sturdiness proceeded from his belief in “the right divine of kings to govern wrong” does not detract from its value however much it may impel us to condemn his theology and even his intelligence. His sincerity and boldness are refreshing. With Bolingbroke we may well exclaim

“High sparks of honour in thee have I seen.”

The Duchess of York appeals to us as a loyal and devoted mother, nor does the worthlessness of her son Aumerle prevent us from admiring the true womanliness of her character and of

her affection for her murdered brother the Duke of Gloucester, and if her thirst for vengeance is in any wise unrighteous it is at least strikingly human, as is also her grief and despair in seeing the wicked exalted

VI Proverbial and Pithy Sayings

- " Things sweet to taste prove to digestion sour " I iii 236
- " All places that the eye of heaven visits
Are to a wise man ports and happy havens " I iii 275 6
- " There is no virtue like necessity " I iii 228
- " Woe doth the heavier sit,
Where it perceives it is but faintly borne " I iii 281-2
- " O who can hold a fire in his hand
By thinking on the frosty Caucasus?
Or cloy the hungry edge of appetite
By base imagination of a feast?
Or wander naked in December snow
By thinking on fantastic Summer's heat?
O no! the apprehension of the good
Gives but the greater feeling to the worse " I iii 243
- " Where words are scarce, they are seldom spent in vain,
For they breathe truth that breathe their words in vain " II i 7 8
- " Violent fires soon burn out themselves,
Small showers last long, but sudden storms are short " II i 34
- " This royal throne of kings, this sceptred isle,
This earth of majesty, this seat of Mars,
This other Eden, demi-Paradise,
This fortress built by Nature for herself,
Against infection and the hand of war,
This happy breed of men, this little world,
This precious stone set in the silver sea,
Which serves it in the office of a wall,
Or as a moat defensive to a house,
Against the envy of less happier lands,
This blessed plot, this earth, this realm, this England " II i 40
- " The ripest fruit first falls " II i 153
- " Comfort's in heaven, and we are on the earth
Where nothing lives but crosses, cares and grief " II ii 79
- II ii 122

- "Evermore thanks the exchequer of the poor " II III 165
 "Not all the water in the rough rude sea
 Can wash the balm from an anointed king " III II 54 5
 "Weak men must fall, for heaven still guards the right "
 III II 62
 "Death will have his day " III II 103
 "Wise men ne'er sit and wail their woes " III II 178
 "Let's talk of graves, of worms, of epitaphs " III II 145
 "And nothing can we call our own but death,
 And that small model of the barren earth
 Which serves as parts and cover to our bones,
 For heaven's sake, let us sit upon the ground
 And tell sad stories of the death of kings " III II 152
 "He is come to ope
 The purple testament of bloody war " III III 93
 "And my large kingdom for a little grave,
 A little grave, an obscure grave " III III 153
 "Gave
 His body to that pleasant country's earth,
 And his pure soul unto his captain, Christ,
 Under whose colours he had fought so long " IV I 97
 "A mockery king of snow " IV I 260
 "Kiss the rod " V I 32.
 "As in a theatre, the eyes of men,
 After a well graced actor leaves the stage,
 Are idly bent on him that enters next,
 Thinking his prattle to be tedious " V II 23
 "Pride must have a fall " V. V 88

VII Metre

The blank verse in which Shakespeare wrote his plays consists of lines or verses containing ten syllables, the second, fourth, sixth, eighth, and tenth of which are accented, the odd syllables being unaccented. Such a line or verse is called an iambic pentameter, an iambus being a combination or foot of two syllables, the second of which is stressed or accented, the first having no accent, and a pentameter (Greek *pente*, five, *metron*, measure) is a combination of five such feet. The chief charm of this metre is its extreme simplicity. Provided proper care be taken to avoid monotony, blank verse is capable of very great literary beauty. It is the great merit of Shakespeare that he rang the changes of infinite variety on this simple metrical combination as no writer before or after him has been able to do. Some of the

monotony thereof, will be given below, meanwhile we proceed to furnish one or two examples of orthodox iambic pentameters from *Richard II*

"Or cloy | the hun|gry ed'ge | of ap'|petite, |
By base | imag|ina|tion of | a féast" | I III 296 7

"This róy|al house | of kings, | this scep|tred is'le, |
This éarth | of maj|esty', | this séat | of Mars" | II 1 40 1

The chief devices for relieving the monotony of ordinary blank verse iambic pentameters are

1 Placing the accent on the *first* instead of on the second syllable of a dissyllabic foot This gives us the *Trochee*, which is the appropriate name for a foot of two syllables, the first of which carries the accent as in the word *happy*

2 The introduction of monosyllabic feet

3 The employment of hypermetric syllables, resulting in trisyllabic or even quadrisyllabic feet

(1) *The accent thrown back on the first syllable* This occurs most commonly after a pause, wherefore, since the pause occurs most frequently at the end of a line, the trochee is most often found at the beginning of a line The accent thus produced is known as the *pause accent*

"*Lóok*, what | I spéak | my lífé | shall próve | it true" |
I 1 87

"*Blood'y* | with spur' | ring, fi'er | y red' | with hast'e" |
II III 58

"*Cóomfort* | my liege | why look's | your grace | so pále" |
III II 75

See also I 1 28, I i 54, I i 88, I II 56, I II 73, I III 7, I III 88, I III 148, II 1 88, II 1 187, II II 108, II III 58, etc

(2) *Monosyllabic feet employed* When great stress is required to be placed upon a monosyllable, no other syllable is allowed to stand in the same foot with it, so that an incomplete foot consisting of a strongly accented monosyllable results Such monosyllables are most often (1) those containing long vowels or diphthongs, (2) those containing a vowel followed by *r*, and (3) imperative or exclamatory monosyllables as "*speak*," "*peace*." It is to be observed that this use of a monosyllable to serve as a dissyllable may be explained as due, either to the natural tendency to dissyllabise a monosyllable whose vowel is long, or to the necessity for a pause after an imperative word, which is most conveniently accomplished by the omission of an unaccented syllable, the place of which would often be supplied

the contrary, the place of the wanting syllable would best supplied by a pause or a gesture as above intimated

(a) *Monosyllabic feet with long vowels or diphthongs*

"Yea, look'st | thou pa | le? Let | me see | the writing " V 11 57

(b) *Monosyllabic feet with vowel or diphthong followed by "r"*

"Who, when | they see | the hó | us ripe | on ear'th " | I 11 7

"And in | compas | sion weep | the fl' | re out " | V 1 48

"Of good | old A' | braham | Ló | ds | appéllants " | IV 1 104

"And long | live Hen | ry fou | rth o' | the name " | IV 1 112

"The date | less him | it óf | thy dé | ar will " | I 111 151

(c) *Emphatic monosyllabic feet*

"Stay, | the king | hath thrown | his war | der down " I 111 118

"What says | he? Ná | y nó | thing, all | is said " II 1 148

"Gentle | mén | will yét | go mus | ter men " | II 11 108

"In my kins | man | u hó m | the kíg | hath wronged " | II 11 114

Not only are monosyllables converted into dissyllables, but also words of two, three, or more syllables are lengthened, frequently by the addition of an "l" or "r". This is referred to by Sidney Walker in his *Shakespeare's Versification* in the following words: "Words such as 'juggler,' 'tickling,' 'kindling,' 'England,' 'angry,' 'children,' and the like are frequently pronounced by ~~English poets as if a vowel were interposed between the~~ liquid and the preceding ~~vowel~~ ^{consonant}." Examples in *Richard II* of this lengthening of words are *Engeland*, IV 1 11, *redoubled* (4 syllables) I 111 80

In this connection must be noted *musicians* (4 syllables), I 111 228, *imitation* (5 syllables), II 1 23, *succession* (4 syllables), II 1 179, *correction* (4 syllables), IV 1 77 *Physician* (5 syllables), I 1 154. The "ed" final is sometimes pronounced as a separate syllable for the sake of the metre, as *accused*, I 1 17, *contrived*, I 1 96, *couched*, I 111 98, etc

(3) *One or more, extra (hypermetric), syllables*

(a) *At the end of a line*

"Námely | to appeal | each óth | er of | high tréason " | I 1 27

"Came I' | appel | lant tó | this prince | ly presence " | I 1 34

"Call him | a slánd | rous ców | ard ánd | a vil'lain " | I 1 61,

and in hundreds of other cases which the student will readily detect

(b) *At the beginning of a line*

"I *had* thóught | my lord | to *have* learned | his héalth | of
yóu " | II III 24

(c) *In the body of a line*

"Lies in | their purses | and whó | so em'p | ties thém " |
II II 130

"As blánks | benevo | lences ánd | I wót | not what " |
II I 250

"Thou Rach | ard sháll | to the Dúke | of NóR | folk " | I II 38

Polysyllabic names, and less frequently other polysyllables, when placed at the end of a line, often receive but one accent, the rest of the syllables being hypermetric, and when lists of names occur in the body of a passage, great liberties are taken with the metre

"That Hár | ry Duke | of Hére | ford, Ram | old Lórd Cobham, |
Sir Thóm | as Er'p | inghám, | Sir Jóhn | Ramstón, |
Sir Jóhn | Norbéry, | Sir Rób | ert Wá | tertón | and Fráncis
Quomt " | II I 279 84

"It múst | be gránt | ed I' | am Dúke | of Láncaster " |
II III 124

"On án | y óth | er gróund | inháb | itable " | I I 65

"That which | he háth | detáined | for léwd | emplóyment " |
I I 90

"Hereford" is to be scanned as a dissyllable, "Herford," throughout the play

4 *Accent and emphasis* Abbot remarks (S 452) that a syllable receiving the rhythmic accent ~~by no means necessarily emphatic~~. It need only be emphatic relatively to the unaccented syllable or syllables in the same foot, and may be much less emphatic than the other accented syllables in the same verse. In Shakespeare's time there was apparently a greater stress upon the word "the" than is the case with us, hence the following

"Through *thé* | false páss | age óf | thy throát | thou hest " |
I I 125

"Draws *thé* | sweet in | fant bréath | of gén | tle sléep " |
I III 133

Monosyllabic prepositions sometimes receive the accent

"Pierced *tó* | the sóul | with alán | der's vén | omed spéar " |
I I 171

"Or *with* | pale bég | gar féar | impéach | my heíght " |
I I 189

5 *Broken verses* When a line is broken up between two speakers, the verse is either

(a) *regular*, as

"Which breathed | this pois | on
Ráge | must bé | withstood " |
I 1 173

Or (b) *Overlapping* of the former by the latter speaker in the completion of the verse

"What say's | his ma | jesty' ? |
| Sorrów | and grief | of héart " |
III iii 184

(c) There may also be what Abbott calls *Amphibious section*, in which a fragment of a verse comes between and completes two other fragments. The best example of this in Richard II is as follows

"I will | appeach | the villain |
| What is | the matter ? |
Péace, | foolish | womán ' |
where, it is to be observed, the two feet
| What is | the matter ? |

make an iambic pentameter, here more or less imperfect, with the three feet that precede and with the three that follow them. This peculiarity is neither so common nor so pronounced in this play as in many other of Shakespeare's works

6 *Elision*, as might be expected, is a very common device for ~~avoiding what would otherwise be hypermetrical syllables by the suppression of a vowel sound~~. The commonest elisions, in addition to 'll for *will*, 're for *are*, n't for *not*, which are in general use to day, are *th'* for *the*, *t'* for *to*, *t'* for *it*, 's for *is* or *his*, 'r for *m*, 'em for *them*. A light vowel following a liquid (*l, m, n, r*) is slurred, and, so far at least as concerns the metre, is lost. This is exceedingly common with *r*. Almost invariably when *th* and *v* come between two vowels, they are dropped, and the two syllables are run into one. In the middle of a trisyllable the vowel *e*, when unaccented, is often dropped

Prefixes and suffixes may be dropped. The former are frequently so treated, the latter not so frequently. It would be tedious to refer to all the instances in which the peculiarities are illustrated in Richard II, hence only one or two typical examples will be given haphazard under each head

th' for the This is very common when "the" is followed by a vowel

"Th' accús | er and | th' accús | ed fréé | ly spéak." | I 1 17
"Th' unstóop | ing fir'm | ness óf | my úp | right sóul " |
I 1 121

t for it

"Your grac | e's pár | don, ánd | I hópe | I hád 't " | I 1 141

's for is

"To áll | his lands | and sig | nories | when he's | retu'n'd " |
IV 1 87

Light vowel slurred before a liquid

"Here tó | make góod | the bóis | t'rous loud | appéal " | I 1 4

"Aimed át | your high | ness nó | invet | 'rate malice " |
I 1 14

"Sluiced out | his m'n | cent sóul | through stréams | of blood " |
I 1 103

"Lord Marsh'l | commánd | our óf | ficers | at ai'ms " |
I 1 104

Also *h'r* (har), I 1 114, *spir't* (spirit), I III 70 (this is the usual pronunciation of spirit in Shakespeare), *rememb'r*, I III 269, *they're*, II 1 7, *flatt'ers*, II 1 100, *en'mies*, II 1 183, *cov'nant*, II III 50, *af't'r*, III II 3, *rev'rence*, III II 172, *cap'tal*, IV 1 151, and in many other places

v dropped between two vowels

"I hear'd | you sáy | that you | had rath'r | refúse " |
IV 1 15

"But fór | our trús | ty bróth'r | in lów, | the ábbot " |
V III 137

"Reproach | and dis | solú | tion háng | eth over (o'er) hvm " |
II 1 258

Unaccented i dropped in trisyllables

"Dogs, éas | ily won | to fáw'n | on an' | y mán " | III II 130

Prefixes dropped 'light, I 1 82, 'complices, II III 165, 'gamst, I III 190 and V II 66, 'plaining, I III 175, 'plavnts, V III 127, 'vantage, I III 218, 'inhabitable (uninhabitable), I 1 65, 'havour, I III 77, 'rag'd, II 1 70, 'tend, IV 1 196

Suffixes dropped *Affects* (affections), I IV 30, *haught* (haughty), IV 1 254, *mads* (maddens), V V 61, *threat* (threatens), III III 90, *yond* (yonder), III III 91

7 *Incomplete verses* occur either at the beginning or at the end of speeches, and in excited dialogue. There is good reason for the belief that many of these irregular verses are due to corruptions that have been allowed to creep into the text. They also mark pauses, the missing feet being filled in by appropriate action as I II 42

"Why thén | I will | Farewéll, | old Gaun't," |
where a long pause, followed by the shaking of hands fills in the

8 *Alexandrines* An Alexandrine is a verse of six feet, each containing two syllables, the second of which is accented, i.e. it is an iambic hexameter. The following is a good example of this kind of metre, by Dryden, who revelled in Alexandrines, which are, it may be observed, in high favour amongst French poets

“And now | by win'ds and wav'es | my lit'e | less lim'bs | are
tos'sed ”

It has been questioned whether Shakespeare ever really made use of iambic hexameters, and much ingenuity has been shown in explaining away apparent Alexandrines. Abbott's statement is not quite so sweeping. He says that a perfect Alexandrine is seldom found in Shakespeare, and certainly the verses of twelve syllables may frequently, by elision and by the postulation of hypermetric syllables, be made to scan as iambic pentameters. But it must be admitted that verses of twelve syllables, every other one of which bears the accent, i.e. iambic hexameters, do occur with sufficient frequency to admit of little doubt that Shakespeare knew of the value of the Alexandrine and further made use of it to vary his iambic pentameters. This is especially the case in Richard II.

Undeniable Alexandrines

“More than' | your lord's' | depárt | ure weép | not, móre's | not
seén ” | II ii 25

“Found truth' | in all' | but óne, | I, in' | twelve thous | and
none ” | IV i 171

See also II ii 41, II ii 109, II iii 168, II iii 29, III ii 90, III iv 74, V ii 28, V iii 21, V iii 42, V iii 101, V iv 2

Apparent Alexandrines resolved

“The Lord' | Northumberland | his son' | young Hén | ry
Percy ” II ii 53.

Here there is no doubt that Northumberland, in accordance with Shakespeare's treatment of names, is intended to form one foot only and the *cy* of Percy is hypermetric.

“And as' | I am' | a gen'tleman | I cried' | it him' ”

The word ‘gentleman’ may here be treated as a dissyllable, the last syllable of which is hypermetric.

9 *Peculiarities of Accent* In some verses, examples of which are given below, apparent irregularities exist, because the word

This being allowed for, the irregularity is at once recognized as only apparent and not real

"Until' | the heavens, | env'y | ing ear'th's | good háp " |
I 1 23

"And for' | our eyés | do háte | the diré | aspect " | I III 127
This is the usual pronunciation of aspect in Shakespeare as will be seen in I III 209

"He shórt | ens four | years of' | my soul' | s exilé " | I III 217

"Making' | the har'd | way sw'et | and de | lectable " |
II III 7

"If th'y | offen' | ces were | upón | record " | IV 1 230

So "adverse," I III 82, "sepulchre," I III 196, "perspectives," II II 18, "superfluous," III IV 64

10 *Rhyme* Concerning the occasional occurrence of rhyme in Shakespeare's plays Dr Abbott remarks "Rhyme was often used as an effective termination to a scene When the scenery was not changed or the arrangements were so primitive that the change was not easily perceptible, it was perhaps additionally desirable to mark that the scene was finished Rhyme was also used in the same convenient way to mark an *aside* which otherwise the audience might have great difficulty in recognizing an *aside*"

To mark the end of a Scene

"Go to Flint castle there I'll pine away,
A king, woe's slave, shall kingly woe obey

Discharge my followers let them hence away,
From Richard's night to Bolingbroke's fair day "
III II 209 219

To mark the end of a speech

"High-stomach'd are they both, and full of ire,
In rage deaf as the sea, hasty as fire "

I 1 18-19

VIII Some Peculiarities of Shakespearian English

Elizabethan English, on a superficial view, appears to present this great point of difference from the English of modern times—that in the former any irregularities whatever, whether in the formation of words or in the combination of words into syllables, are allowable. In the first place, almost any part of speech can be used as any other part of speech An adverb can be used as a verb, "They askance their eyes", as a noun, "the backward

APPENDIA

verb You can "happy" your friend, "malice" or "fool" your enemy, or "fall" an axe on his neck. An adjective can be used as an adverb, and you can feel and act "easy," "tree," "excellent", or as a noun, and you can talk of "fair" instead of "beauty," and a "pale" instead of a "paleness." Even the pronouns are not exempt from these metamorphoses. A "he" is used for a man, and a lady is described by a gentleman as "the fairest she he has yet beheld."

In the second place, every variety of apparent grammatical inaccuracy meets us. *He* for *him*, *him* for *he*, *spoke* and *took* for *spoken* and *taken*, plural nominatives with singular verbs, relatives omitted where they are now considered necessary, unnecessary antecedents inserted, *shall* for *will*, *should* for *would*, *would* for *wish*, *to* omitted after "I ought," inserted after "I durst", double negatives, double comparatives (more better, etc.), and superlatives, *such* followed by *which*, *that* by *as*, *as* used for *as if*, *that* for *as that*, and lastly, some verbs with apparently two nouns, and others without any nominative at all.—Abbott, *Shakespearian Grammar*

I NOUNS

Plural where we use singular

"Whither you will, so I were from your *sights*" IV 1 315

When an abstract noun as above refers to several persons it was the custom amongst Elizabethan writers to use the plural form as here

"Say when, where, and how,

"Cam'st thou by *this ill tidings*' speak, thou wretch"

III IV 79 80.

So *news*, III IV 82, and *odds*, III IV 89

Singular where we use plural

"And everything is left at *six and seven*"

II II 122.

Abstract for concrete

"Cousin, farewell, what *presence* must not know,

From where you do remain let paper show"

I III 249

So *slander*, I 1 113, *recept*, I 1 126, *ransom*, II 1 56, *conduct*, IV 1 157, *fear*, V VI 31

Nouns used as adjectives

"Such *neighbour nearness* to our sacred blood"

I 1 119

So *traitor*, I 1 102, *companion*, I II 55, *infant*, I III 133, *December*, I III 298, *venom*, II 1 19, *rassal*, III III 89, *subject*, IV 1 126; *sunshine*, IV 1 221, *triumph*, V II 66

Verb used as noun

Although it is very common in Shakespeare to find a noun used as a verb, it is uncommon to find a verb used as a noun as here

II ADJECTIVES

Adjective used as adverb *Right* (=rightly), I i 46, *all* (=quite), I iii 205, *orderly*, I iii 9, *grievous* (=grievously), I iv 54, *new* (=newly), II i 31, *heavy* (=heavily), II ii 30, *big* (=boastingly), III ii 114, *double* (=doubly), III ii 117, etc

Compound adjectives These are exceedingly common in Shakespeare's writings, the doublets often being alliterative which gives them an even greater force

Time honour'd, I i 1, *high stomach'd*, I i 18, *soon-believing*, I i 101, *ten times barr'd up*, I i 180, *out dared*, I i 190, *daring hardy*, I i 43, *eagle wing'd*, I iii 129, *sky aspiring*, I iii 130, *rival hating*, I iii 131, *harsh resounding*, I iii 135, etc, etc

Adjectives out of place

"Divides are thing *entire* to many objects" II ii 17

"*Welcome* you are" II iii 170

"*Glad* am I" III ii 104

"That in a Christian climate souls *refined*
Should show so heinous black obscene a deed" IV i 130 1

Possessive adjective transposed

"*Dear my* hege" I i 184

Observe the French idiom as well as inversion in *letters patents*, II i 202, formerly many Romance adjectives were inflected in this fashion

Double superlative No good example in *Richard II*

Double comparative

"The envoy of *less happier* times" II i 49

This is a very peculiar expression

"Thy waste is no whit *baser* than thy land" II i 103
Also II i 95 and III iii 137

Adjective used as noun

"And let them die that age and *sullens* have" II i 139

Also *good*, I ii 57 and I iii 300, *worse*, I iii 301, *last*, II i 1, *happy*, v iii 94

"*Un*" used as adjectival suffix in place of "in"

"Should run thy head from thy *unreverent* shoulders" II i 123

Concerning this very common substitute of *in* for *un* and *vice versa*, Abbot says, ' We appear to have no definite rule of distinction even now, since we use *ungrateful*, *ingratitude*, *unequal*, *inequality* *Un* seems to have been preferred by Shakespeare before *p* and *r*, which do not allow *in* to precede, except in the form *im* *In* seems also to have been retained in many cases from the Latin, as in the case of *ingratus*, *impertunum*, etc. As a general rule we now use *in* where we desire to make the negative a part of the word and *un* where the separation is maintained—untune, infirm, hence *un* is always used with participles—untamed, etc. Perhaps also *un* is stronger than *in* "

The=by that=ablative of old demonstrative "thaet "

"Woe doth *the* heavier sit "

I iv 279

III ARTICLES

Definite article omitted

"Ah, Richard, with the eyes of heavy mind "

II iv 18

"So longest way shall have the longest moans "

v i 90

Indefinite article omitted

"If ever I were traitor "

I iii 201

"In war was never lion rag'd so fierce "

II i 173

"It is such crimson tempest should bedrench "

III iii 46

IV ADVERBS

Double negatives The Old English custom in respect to negatives was to make the one intensify or emphasise the other. The Latin custom is that the one annihilates the other, as in *nonnunquam*, *not never=sometimes*. The Latin custom did not come into our language until after the middle of the seventeenth century. The English custom is seen in Matt xxii 46 "Ne nân ne dorste nan thing âcsian" (No one durst ask him any thing), and in Chaucer's *Prologue*, 70-71 where he says of the Knight

"He never yit no vilemye ne sayde,
In al his lyf, unto no maner wight "

In each of these sentences there are four negatives —Meiklejohn

"Nor never look upon each other's face "

I iii 185

"Vex not yourself, nor strive not with your breath "

II i 3

"Nor no man's lord "

IV i 255

"Nor shall not be the last "

V v 25

"Where no man never comes but that sad dog "

V v 70

Also I iii 185 and I iii 188

The old genitive case of nouns and pronouns used as adverbs

"Needs must I like it well" III ii 4

Compare also backwards and sideways

Adverbs with the prefix "a," which signifies some preposition, such as "in," "on," "of," "at"

"Show nothing but confusion, eyed awry" II ii 19

But = only

"Stays but the summons of the appellant's trumpet" I iii 3

Adverb used as adjective

"The anointed king is hence" II iii 96

Eclipse of adverbial inflection

"The Duke of Norfolk, sprightly and bold" I iii 2

This is very common, the *ly* is understood from the preceding word and so serves for the seeming adjective, which it converts into a true adverb

V PRONOUNS

"Thou" used for "thee"

"Make me, that nothing have, with nothing grieved,
And thou with all pleased, that hast all achieved"

IV i 216 7

Personal pronoun used as a reflexive This is a common Elizabethan idiom, and was due to the fact that reflexive pronouns were innovations that had not yet asserted themselves sufficiently to exclude personal pronouns from being used reflexively as had been the case previously

"Then thus I turn *me* from my country's light" I iii 176

Cp II i 147 (*him* = *himself*), II ii 106 (*thee* = *thyself*), II iii 161 (*you* = *yourself*), III iii 83 (*them* = *themselves*)

Relative omitted

"Why have you not proclaimed Northumberland,
And all the rest [that are] revolted faction traitors?"

II ii 57

"I hate the murderer, love him (who is) murdered" V v 40

Cp I i 50, II ii 128, III iii 169, IV i 256, IV i 334, V iv 2, in all of which the omitted relative is in the nominative case

Also I ii 1, II ii 145, II iii 73, III ii 94, III ii 211, III iv 101, IV i 198, where the omitted relative is in the objective case

"Which" used for "who" and "that"

"Now for the rebels *which* stand out in Ireland" I iv 38

"Beshrew me, cousin, *which* didst lead me forth " III II 205

"And wilt thou, pupil like,
Take thy correction mildly, kiss the rod,
And fawn on rage with base humility,
Which art a lion and a king of beasts " V I 31 4

Redundant object Instead of saying "I know what you are," in which the object of the verb "I know" is the clause "what you are," Shakespeare frequently introduces, before the dependent clause, another object, so as to make the dependent clause a mere explanation of the object —Abbott

"March on and mark *King Richard* how he looks " III III 61

"Didst thou not mark the *King*, what words he spake ?" V IV I

"*What*" as a *relative* What being simply the neuter of the interrogative who, ought consistently to be similarly used. As, therefore, *who* is used relatively, we may expect *what* to be used likewise. And so it is, but, inasmuch as the adjective *which* very early took the force of the relative pronoun, *what* was supplanted by *which*, and is rarely used relatively. Even when it is thus used, it generally stands before its antecedent, thereby indicating its interrogative force, though the position of the verb is altered to suit a statement instead of a question —Abbott

"*What* our contempt doth often hurl from us
We wish *it* ours again "

"Look *what* I speak my life shall prove *it* true " I I 87

"*The which*" used, with repetition of the antecedent

"Eight hundred nobles,
In name of *lendings* for your highness' soldiers,
The which (nobles) he hath detained for lewd employment " I I 90

That=which thing

"And, *that* is worse,
The Lord Northumberland, his son, young Harry Percy,
With all their powerful friends, are fled to him " II II 55

Which=as to which

"Showers of blood,
The which how far off from the mind of Bolingbroke,
It is such crimson tempest should bedew " III III 45

"With unrestrained loose companions—
Even such, they say, as stand in narrow lanes,
And beat our watch, and rob our passengers,
Which he, young, wanton and effeminate boy,
Takes on the point of honour to support

V III 10.

"*As*" used as a relative

"I cannot but be sad, so heavy-sad
As makes me faint "

II. ii 31

which means "I feel such sadness *as* "

VI VERBS

"In general distinction of inflections which prevailed during the Elizabethan period, *en* was particularly discarded. It was therefore dropped in the conversion of nouns and adjectives into verbs, except in some cases where it was peculiarly necessary to distinguish a noun or adjective from a verb. Hence it may be said that any noun or adjective should be converted into a verb by the Elizabethan author "

Nouns as verbs

"Grace me no grace, nor *uncle* me no uncle " II iii 87

"*Imp* out our drooping country's broken wing " II i 292

"And *clouster* thee in some religious house " V i 23

"Let me *unkiss* the oath 'twixt thee and me " V i 74

"Who sitting in the stocks *refuge* their shame " V v 26

"Then am I *ling'd* again, and by and by
 Think that I am *unking'd* by Bolingbroke " V v 36 7

Also *to safeguard*, I ii 35, *piece*, V i 92, *joy*, V iii 95

Intransitive used transitively

"Which false hope *lingers* in extremity " II ii 72

Here *lingers* = *lengthens out*

"Let not to-morrow, then, *ensue* to day " II i 197

"That he, our hope, might have *retired* his power " II ii 46

"For why the senseless brands will *sympathise*
 The heavy accent of thy moving tongue " V i 46 7

"Oh how it *yearn'd* my heart when I beheld " V v 76

Also *atone*, I i 202, *remember* = remind, I iii 269, *stay*, II i 289, *part*, III i 31, *scoffing*, III ii 163, *fall*, III iv 104

Transitive used intransitively

"The love of wicked men *converts* to fear " V i 66

"For there, they say, he daily doth *frequent* " V iii 6

"Disorder, horror, fear and mutiny
 Shall here *inhabit* " IV i 141-2.

Is for has (common with verbs of motion)

II i 69

"Is safe arrived," II ii 50, "Are fled to him," v ii 56,
 "Are gone and fled," III ii 73, also v iii 82, III ii 73, IV i
 89, etc., etc

Impersonal verbs

"Me rather had my heart might feel your love" III iii 142

Dr Abbott (sect 230) says "In Chaucer and earlier writers, preference is expressed, not by our modern 'I had, or would, rather' (=sooner), but by (To) me (it) were liefer (German *lieber*), that is, more pleasant" These two idioms are confused in this passage *Me* is a dative, as in *Methinks*, *me seems*, etc

Singular verb with plural nominative

"What is six winters?" I iii 261

"Reproach and dissolution hangeth over him" II i 258

"How near the tidings of our comfort is" II i 272

"Twenty shadows, which shows like grief itself" II ii 15

Also "oath and duty bids" II ii 112

"Conscience and kindred bids" II ii 115

"Hills and ways draws" II iii 4

"Is Bushy, Green, and Wiltshire dead?" III ii 141

"There lies two kinsmen" III iii 169

"Sorrow and grief makes" III iii 184

Plural verb with singular nominative

"What store of parting tears were shed" I iv 5

Verbs of motion omitted

"Will I hence" I iii 73

"I towards the north" v i 76

"I will with the king" v ii 84

Also I ii 56, II i 296, III ii 217, v i 37, v iii 16, etc., etc

May = can

"For I may never lift
 An angry arm against His minister" I ii 40

"I may not shew it" v ii 70

"He is as like thee as a man may be" v ii 108

Shall for will and should for would

"To be a make-peace shall become my age" I i 160

"And all too soon, I fear, the king shall rue" I iii 205

"By this the weary lords
 Shall make their way seem short" II iii 17

"How his son's son should destroy his sons" II i 105

"If thou wouldst,
 There shouldst thou find one heinous article" IV i 232

Formation of participles

Owing to the tendency to drop the inflection *en*, Elizabethan authors frequently used the curtailed forms of the past participle, which are common in Early English, when, however, the form thus curtailed was in danger of being confused with the infinitive as in 'taken,' they used the past tense for the past participle

(a) Curtailed past participle

"What I have <i>spoke</i> , or thou canst worse divine "	I 1 77
" <i>Writ</i> in remembrance more than things long past "	II 1 14
" <i>Hath broke</i> his staff "	II 11 59
"My lord, I had <i>forgot</i> to tell your lordship "	II 11 93
"No, my good lord he hath <i>forsook</i> the court "	II 111 25
"Had you first died, and he been thus <i>trod</i> down "	II 111 126
"That when the searching eye of heaven is <i>hid</i> "	III 11 37.
"For you have but <i>mistook</i> me all this while "	III 11 174
"Your children yet unborn and <i>unbegot</i> "	III 111 88
Also <i>shook</i> , IV 1 163, <i>holp</i> , V V 62, <i>bestrid</i> , V V 79, <i>eat</i> , V V 85	

(b) "a" before present participle

"Thou, now a-dying, say'st thou flatterest me "	II 1 90
---	---------

Future for subjunctive

"Will ye permit that I <i>shall</i> stand condemn'd "	II 111 119
---	------------

Infinitive used as noun

"Except like curs to <i>tear</i> us all to pieces "	II V 139
---	----------

Abbott says that *to tear* is a noun governed by *except*

Infinitive used indefinitely

"I was too strict to <i>make</i> mine own away "	I 111 244*
--	------------

To make=in making

"But I shall grieve you to report the rest "	
--	--

To report=by reporting

"I do beseech your grace

To have some conference with your grace alone "

To have=about having

Subjunctive used optatively

" <i>Hold out</i> , my horse, and I will first be there "	II i 300
---	----------

Ed=able.

VII PREPOSITIONS

<i>On=of</i>	
"By thinking <i>on</i> the frosty Caucasus "	I III 295
<i>On=in</i>	
"As, though <i>on</i> thinking <i>on</i> no thought I think "	II II 31
" <i>On</i> what condition stands it ? "	II III 107
<i>By=to come near to, attain</i>	
"How cam'st thou <i>by</i> these ill tidings ? "	III IV 80
<i>By=as a consequence</i>	
"Fear'd <i>by</i> their breed and famous <i>by</i> their birth "	II I 52
<i>For=as for, as regards</i>	
"But <i>for</i> our trusty brother in law and the abbott "	V III 137
<i>In=in the case of</i> Abbott remarks we say "in my own person "	
or "by inquiry," not	
"Which <i>in myself</i> I boldly will defend "	I I 145
So "But I bethink me what a weary way	
<i>In</i> Ross and Willoughby will be found "	
<i>ie</i> "in the case of Ross," equivalent to "by Ross "	
<i>Of=as regards, about</i>	
"Enquire <i>of</i> him "	III II 186
<i>To=for</i>	
"I have a king here <i>to</i> my flatterer "	IV I 308
<i>Upon=in consequence of</i>	
"Thy son is banished <i>upon</i> good advice "	I III 233
<i>With=on</i>	
"I live <i>with</i> bread like you "	III II 175
<i>With=at</i>	
"My inward soul	
<i>With</i> nothing trembles, at some thing it grieves,	
More than <i>with</i> parting from the lord the king "	II II 123
<i>Withal</i> , the emphatic form of 'with,' is used for <i>with</i> after the object at the end of a sentence In the following example it means besides	
' Adding <i>withal</i> "	IV I 18
<i>Without=outside</i>	
"What seal is that that hangs <i>without</i> thy bosom "	V I 56
<i>Preposition omitted after verbs of motion</i> (a common idiom)	
"Since presently your souls must part your bodies "	III I 3

Preposition omitted before the thing heard after verbs of hearing

"He that no more must say is listened more " II 1 9

Preposition transposed

"The pleasure that some fathers feed *upon* " II 1 79

"It stands your grace *upon* to do him right " II III 138

VIII CONJUNCTIONS

And=and that too

"And shall the figure of God's majesty,

Be judged by subject and inferior breath,
And he himself not present "

IV 1 129

An According to Abbott this conjunction, meaning 'if,' is simply a form of 'and,' and the supposition being expressed by the subjunctive that follows 'an' and not by 'an' itself. The addition of 'if' to the 'an' he attributes to the same desire for heaping on the meaning as gave rise to double comparatives, double superlatives, and double negatives

"*An if* I were thy nurse, thy tongue to teach " V III 113

'*As*' *apparently, but not really=as if* (The 'if' is really implied in the subjunctive as in the case of 'an')

"As gentle and as jocund *as* (if I were going) to jest,
Go I to fight "

I III 95

As=namely

"No, it is stopped with other plotting sounds,
As praises of his state "

II 1 18

'*But*' *signifying prevention*

"I doubt not but to ride as fast as York "

II V 2

which means "I have no doubt (i.e. fear) about being prevented from riding "

'*So*,' *with the future or subjunctive=provided that*

"Poor queen ' *so that* thy state may be no worse,
I would my skill were subject to thy curse "

III IV 102

So as=so that

"So as thou livest in peace, die free from strife "

V V 57

Where=whereas,

"Where fearing dying pays death servile breath " III II 185

For because, a tautologous combination

"And *for because* the world is populous "

IX Figures of Speech

I FIGURES OF RESEMBLANCE

1 *Simile* (Latin, *similis*, like) is a comparison between two things, and expresses in direct language a similarity of relation between them. The words commonly used to introduce this figure are *as* and *like*.

"Like a false traitor and injurious villain" I i 91

"Like a traitor coward

Sluc'd out his innocent soul" I i 103

"Strong as a tower in hope I cry amen" I iii 102

2 *Metaphor* (Gk *meta*, change, *pherein*, to carry) is a figure of substitution, and not of mere comparison, as is the simile; one thing is put for, or said to be, another. It is a simile with the words *as* and *like* omitted.

"The caterpillars of the Commonwealth,

Which I have sword to weed and cut away" II iii 166

"This aque fit of fear is overblown" III ii 190

The above are examples of mixed metaphor, since we do not weed caterpillars nor do fits blow over.

"The searching eye of heaven (the sun)" III ii 37

"To whose flint bosom my condemned lord" V i 3

3 *Personification* (Latin, *persona* = a mask, a person) is a figure in which lifeless things are spoken of as persons.

"Obedience bids I should not bid again" I i 163

"Teaching stern murder how to butcher thee" I ii 32

"Let Heaven revenge" I ii 40

"Truth hath a quiet breast" I iii 96

The following list of personified inanimate objects and abstract ideas are amongst the many instances of this figure of speech occurring in *Richard II*.

Destinies, I ii 15, *envy*, I ii 21, *nature*, II i 43, *war*, II i 44, *time*, II i 195, *necessity*, V i 21

4 *Apostrophe* (Gk *apo*, aside, *strepho*, I turn) is a figure in which a person or thing is addressed. The speaker arrests the normal progress of the recital, and 'turns aside' to call, more or less passionately, upon some person or thing connected directly or indirectly with the things or events referred to in the main speech. When an inanimate object is so apostrophized, personification as well as apostrophe is made use of.

"And as I truly fight, defend me heaven" I iii 25

"Swell'st thou, proud heart?" III iii 140

"Mount, mount my soul!" V v 111

V v 90.

5 *Allegory* = *sustained metaphor*

"So is it in the music of men's lives
 And here have I the daintiness of ear
 To check time broke in a disorder'd string,
 But for the concord of my state and time
 Had not an ear to hear my true time broke
 I wasted time, and now doth time waste me,
 For now hath time made me his numbering clock,
 My thoughts are minutes, and with sighs they jar
 Their watches on unto mine eyes, the outward watch,
 Whereto my finger, like a dial's point,
 Is pointing still, in cleansing them from tears
 Now sir, the sound that tells what hour it is
 Are clamorous groans, which strike upon my heart,
 Which is the bell so sighs and tears and groans
 Show minutes, times, and hours but my time
 Runs posting on in Bolingbroke's proud joy,
 While I stand fooling here, his Jack o' the clock

v v 44-60

6 *Euphemism* (Gk *eu*, well, *phemi*, I speak) is a figure by which an offensive idea is softened down and stated in an offensive or, belike, laudatory form

"O, good! convey? *conveyers* are you all" iv i 317

This is an ironical euphemism for thieves

"Until the heavens, envying earth's good hap,

Add an immortal title to your crown" v i 68

A euphemism for "until you die"

7 *Hyperbole* (Gk *hyper*, beyond, *ballo*, I throw) is a figure of exaggeration, things being represented as greater than they are. Hence hyperbole is only another name for exaggerated statement. This figure is well exemplified in the wooing and cursing scenes. In the former it is the flattering and the latter the discrediting exaggeration that is employed

"Ere my tongue
 Shall wound my honour with such feeble wrong,
 Or sound so base a parle, my teeth shall tear
 The slavish motive of recanting fear"

i i 190 3

"Within my mouth you have engao'd my tongue,
 Doubly portcullis'd with my teeth and lips"

i iii 166 7

"And in the sentence my own life destroy'd"

i iii 242

II FIGURES OF CONTRAST

8 *Antithesis* (Gk *anti*, against, *tithemi*, I place) is a figure in

APPENDIX

"The <i>accuser</i> and the <i>accused</i> freely speak "	I 1 17
"Since the <i>more fair</i> the crystal in the sky, The <i>uglier</i> seem the clouds that in it fly "	I i 42 3
"Upon his <i>bad</i> life to make all this <i>good</i> "	I 1 99
"Things <i>sweet</i> to taste prove to digestion <i>sour</i> "	I iii 236
"Small showers last <i>long</i> , but sudden storms are <i>short</i> "	II 1 34
"And my <i>large kingdom</i> for a <i>little grave</i> "	III iii 153
9 <i>Epigram</i> =a pointed and pithy saying	
"Numbering sands and drinking oceans dry "	II ii 146
"I wasted time, and now doth time waste me "	V v 49
"Pride must have a fall "	V v 88

III FIGURES OF ASSOCIATION

10 *Metonymy* (Gk *meta*, change, *onoma*, a name) is a figure which substitutes the name of one thing for the name of another with which it is connected

"Farewell *my blood* " I iii 57.

'Blood'=Bolingbroke, who is a blood relation of the king

"Such is the *breath* of kings " I iii 215

It is not the breath but the power of the king expressed in words that is meant

"Truth hath a quiet *breast* (=heart) " I iii 96

11 *Hypallage* (Gk *hypo*, under, *allage*, change) is a figure in which an attribute is transferred from its proper subject to others that are closely connected with them

"Now by my *sceptre's awe* " I i 118

'Awe' does not belong to the sceptre, but to the king who wields it

"To take advantage of the *absent time* " II iii 79

It is not time but the king who is absent

"He is in the *mighty hold* of Bolingbroke " III iv 83

It is Bolingbroke who is mighty, and not the hold

X Alliteration

Alliteration is the frequent recurrence of the same sound consequent upon the recurrence of the same letter, generally initial, as in the well known "*A*pt alliteration's artful aid" This elementary device for tickling the ear was prior to rhyme, with which it agrees in so far as it consists in sameness of sound, the difference being that in rhyme the sameness is not that merely of single letters but of syllables, nor does it occur at the beginnings, but at the ends of lines Shakespeare's alliterations

are alliterative It may be desirable to remind the student that in the hands of a master, such as Shakespeare, Chaucer, or Tennyson, alliteration is capable of producing a pleasing, and even a beautiful effect

"Appellant to this princely presence" I i 34

"The kindred of the king" I i 70

"My loving lord, I take my leave of you" I iii 63

"Virtue and valour" I iii 98

So "sly slow hours," I iii 150, "sullen sorrow," I iii 227, "happy havens," I iii 276, "ripest fruit first falls," II i 153, "thy last long leave," v i 35, etc , etc

XI Examples of paraphrasing

"All places that the eye of heaven visits

The man that mocks at it and sets it light "

I iii 275 293

"A safe retreat and even a happy refuge will be found by the philosophic soul where'er the genial beams of the sun gladden the earth, wherefore I counsel thee to regard forceful compulsion as in itself a good Imagine that thou thyself dost turn thy back on the King, and not that he doth bid thee go, since sorrow suffered impatiently doth thereby sting the more Say that at my behest thou goest forth in search of glory and renown, and nurture not the thought that thou hast been outlawed by the King Persuade thyself that of thine own free will thou seekest in a heathen clime exemption from a pestilential plague raging at home Picture to thyself that what thy soul desires most lies whither thou goest and not in the place whence thou art newly come In the grass beneath thy exiled feet see the rush-strewn floor of the presence chamber, and regard thy onward passage as but the stately measure of the dance, the sweet flowers being to thy eyes the fair ladies of the court, since heart eating grief bites less the more thou laugh'st its power to scorn "

"Think I am dead and that even here thou takest

For the deposing of a rightful king " v i 38 50

"Esteem me dead and let this parting be as from a breath bereft corpse And when in evening gloom of wintry days the pitying farm-folk seated round the blazing logs bend their ears to list to mournful tales of days long gone, then tell to them the piteous tale of Richard's hapless fate and they shall seek their couches with tear dimmed eyes nay, e'en the lifeless brands upon the hearth will melt with fire quenching tears, and

XII Example of analysis

“All places that the eye of heaven visits

But thou the king” I III 275 280

Sentence	Link.	Kind	Subject	Enlargement of Subject	Predicative	Object		Enlargement of Object	Extension
						Direct	Indirect		
I All places are to a wise man ports and happy havens		Principal	places	all	a ports and happy havens		to a man	wise and happy	
II That the eye of heaven visits	that	Subj. adjec- tive to I	eye	of heaven	visits	that			
II Teach thy necessity to reason thus		Principal	(you)		teach	necessity	to reason thus	thy	
IV There is no virtue like necessity		Principal	virtue	no like (to) necessity	is there				
V Think not		Principal	(thou)		think	thee			not
VI The king did banish thee		Subj. noun to V	king	the	did banish				
II But (think)	but	Principal	(thou)		(think)	king		tho	
II That thou didst banish the king	that	Subj. noun to VII	thou		didst banish				

HISTORICAL SKETCH

1397 1398

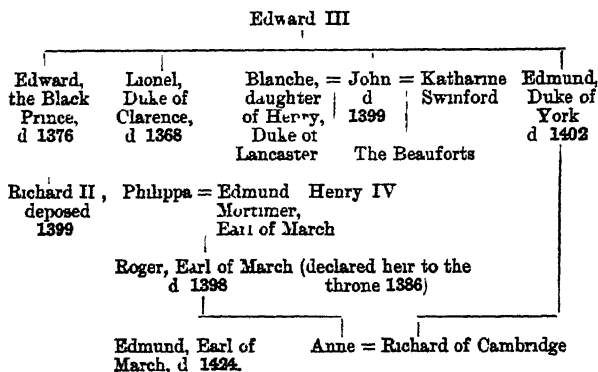
- a Recriminatory quarrel between the newly created dukes of Hereford and Norfolk The quarrel referred by the Permanent Committee to settlement by single combat at Coventry The combat forbidden by the King, Hereford banished for ten years, Norfolk for life

1399

- b Death of John of Gaunt, seizure of his estates by the King with the sanction of the Permanent Committee Departure of the King for Ireland to avenge the defeat and death of Edmund Earl of March, and return of Hereford from France, owing to the influence of Archbishop Arundel, for the recovery of his estates
- c Landing of Hereford (Henry of Lancaster) at Ravenspur, July 4, Henry joined by Earls of Northumberland (Percy) and Westmoreland (Neville) and Edmund Duke of York, the regent, at Berkeley Castle March upon Cheshire Dispersal of the King's forces commanded by the Earl of Salisbury (John de Montacute) Capture of Bristol by Henry July 29
- d Landing of the King at Milford Haven, July 25, to find himself deserted Submission of the King to Henry at Flint The King brought to London Sept 2
- e Parliament summoned by the King to meet upon Sept 30 Resignation of the crown (Sept 29) presented to Parliament on its meeting The resignation accepted, and articles of accusation presented against Richard complaining of
 - i His unjust conduct to Henry of Lancaster, Archbishop Arundel, and the Duke of Gloucester
 - ii His breaches of the Constitution, tampering with the judges (1387), and appeal to the Pope (1398)
 - iii His illegal taxation, especially the extortion of money from seventeen counties for pardons (1399), non-payment of loans, and alienation of crown lands
 - iv His claim to the absolute right of legislation

APPENDIX

GENEALOGICAL TABLE



HISTORICAL NOTES ON PERSONS MENTIONED IN *RICHARD II*

Abbot of Westminster=William of Colchester (1386-1420)
Holinshed, followed by Shakespeare, gives 1399 instead of
1420 as the year of his death

Aumerle, Duke of=Earl of Rutland, son of Duke of York,
whom he succeeded Killed at Agincourt, 1415

Berkeley, Earl=Thomas, 5th Baron of Berkeley in Gloucester
shire

Bagot=Sir William Bagot, who was Sheriff of the County of
Leicester in 1378 and 1380

Bolingbroke=Henry, Duke of Hereford (1366-1413), eldest son of
John of Gaunt Born at Bolingbroke in Leicestershire.
Reigned as Henry IV (1399-1413)

Bushy=Sir John Bushy, who, in 1399, was Speaker of the House
of Commons

Carlisle=Thomas Meeks, Bishop of Carlisle (1397) Imprisoned
in Tower for high treason (1400) for short time Was
formerly a Westminster monk

Saunt, John o'=4th son of Edward III Born at Ghent, hence name (1340 1399)

Green=Sir Henry Green, son of Justice of King's Bench to Edward III, of same name

Langley, Edmund of, Duke of York, 5th son of Edward III (1341-1402)

Marshal, Lord=Thomas Holland, deputy to Mowbray, Duke of Norfolk

Mowbray, Thomas=Duke of Norfolk, who was made Earl Marshal (1386), Governor of Calais (1397), when Duke of Gloucester, his prisoner, died or was murdered Made Duke of Norfolk same year Died in 1400 at Venice

Northumberland, Earl of=Henry Percy Sided with Bolingbroke at first, but afterwards rebelled against him Killed at battle of Bramham Moor (Yorkshire), 1408

Percy, Henry=son of above (1366 1403) Sided at first with Bolingbroke, but afterwards rebelled Killed at battle of Shrewsbury, 1403

Richard II (Bordeaux) Born at Bordeaux 1366 King 1366-1399 Son of Black Prince, and grandson of Edward III

Ross, Lord=William de Ros of Hamlake, Treasurer to Henry IV Died 1414

Salisbury, Earl of=John Montacute, 3rd Earl Salisbury Beheaded 1400

Surrey, Duke of=Thomas Holland, Earl of Kent, who in 1399 was made Duke of Surrey Beheaded with Salisbury in 1400

Willoughby=William, 5th Lord d'Eresby Married Duchess of York. Died 1409

HISTORICAL ANACHRONISMS AND INACCURACIES

"And I will turn thy falsehood to thy heart,
Where it was forged, with my rapier's point"

IV 1 39

The rapier, a long pointed sword, was not known in England until long after the reign of Richard II In Balleines' Dialogue between Boyonene and Chiruagi (1579), the "long foming rapier" is spoken of as "a new kynd of instrument" Shakespeare was always indifferent to anachronisms of this kind For example, in

It is also objected that Shakespeare speaks of Gaunt, who was but 58, as "Gaunt in being old," of the Queen, who was a child of ten, as though she were a woman, and of Aumerle as though he were the son of the then Duchess of York, whereas he was the son of a former marriage. Concerning the age of Norfolk, who could not have been 40 at the time of his banishment, when he spoke of "the language I have learned these 40 years," and also as to the date of the death of the Duchess of Gloucester, which took place in 1399, and not immediately after the return of Bolingbroke from banishment, there is also some inaccuracy, whether accidental or intentional cannot now be ascertained, but it is possible (1) that Gaunt was really decrepit, as life was much shorter in Shakespeare's time than now, (2) that Norfolk, aged a little more than 30, spoke approximately, and (3) that Shakespeare purposely regarded Queen Isabel as a woman for the purpose of dramatic effect, since the sayings and doings of a child wife could not be of any interest, whereas the queen of the play is a feeling, sensible, and brave woman

GLOSSARY.

- abet** (II III 146), encourage, O F *abeter*, incite
abundant (V III 66), overflow, L *abundare*
achieve (II I 254), accomplish, O F *achever* from *venir a chey*,
to come to one's object
along (I III 199), long way, O E *and*, against, *lang*, long
amazing (I III 81), bewildering, *a*, intensive, *maze*, labyrinth.
antic (III II 162), mimic, L *antiquus*, old
appeach (V II 79), impeach, L L *impedicare*, to fetter
apricocks (III IV 29) F *abricot*, Port *albricoque*
atone (I I 202), bring to unity, A S *aet*, at, *an*, one
attainder (IV I 24), accurate, O F *aten dre*, to condemn
attorney (II III 134), representative, O F *atorner*, to arrange
aught (II III 73), anything, A S *án*, one, *wiht*, thing
barbed (III III 117), accoutred, F *barde*, horse armour
bedrench (III III 46), soak, A S *be* and *dren can*, to drench
bereft (II I 237), deprived, A S *bireafian*
besREW (III II 204), curse (mild), Ety doubtful
betid (V I 42), O E *be* or *bi* and *tiden*
bias (III IV 5), inclination, F *bais*, incline
boon (IV I 302), favour; F *bon*, good
boot (I I 164), advantage, A S *bót*
brook (III II 2), endure, A S *brucan*, use, enjoy
caltif (I II 53), captive and so miserable, L *captus*

- caterpillar** M E *catyrypūl*, from O F *chattepeleuse*
- choler** (I 1 153), wrath, Gr *chole*, bile
- chopping** (V III 124), changing, M E *choppen*, cut
- cloister** (V 1 23) O F *clostre*, L *claustrum*
- cloy** (I III 296), glut, O F *cloyer*, to shut up
- control** (I III 90), *contre roll*, and from O F *contre rolle*, a duplicate register to control original
- counterfeit** (I IV 14), pretend, F *contrefaire*
- cozen** (II II 69), cheat, F *cousiner*, to claim relationship for bad end
- craft** (I IV 13), skill, A S *craeft*, power
- cunning** (I III 163), skilful, A S *cunnan*, to know
- curb** (I 1 54), to restrain, F *courber*, bend
- deck** (I IV 62), cover, G *decken*, to cover
- distaff** (III II 118), spinning staff, L G *diesse*, flax, A S *staef*, staff
- eager** (I 1 48), sharp, F *aigre*, L *acer*, sharp
- ear** (III II 112), plough, A S *eran*, to plough
- exchequer** (II III 65), treasury, O F *eschiquier*, chess board so called from chequered table cloth used in Court of Exchequer
- fare** (II 1 71), to go, A S *faran*, to go
- fealty** (V II 45), loyalty, O F *feaulté*
- fell** (I II 46), cruel, A S *fel*, fierce, to be distinguished from
- fell** (III 1 23), to cut down, A S *fellan*, to cause to fall
- fellow** (III II 99), equal, Icel *félagi*, partner
- fiend** (IV 1 270), demon, enemy, A S *feond*, cf G *feind*, enemy
- foil** (I III 265), gold or silver leaf at back of gem to throw it up, L *folium*, leaf
- fond** (V 1 101), foolish, M E *fonnen*, to act foolishly
- forfend** (IV 1 129), avert, hybrid E *for*, L *deprendere*, defend
- forgo** (I III 361), for thoroughly and go
- foster** (I III 126), to nourish, A S *fostor*, nourishment, from *fōda*, food
- foul** (I 1 44), unclean, A S *fūl*

- gait (III ii 15), mode of walking , Ic *gata*, path
 gaoler (I iii 169), prison keeper , O F *garole*, from L L *gabiola*,
 a cage
 glose (II i 10), flatter , Gr *glossa*, the tongue
 gnarling (I iii 292), snarling (onomatopoetic word)
 gore (I iii 60), pierce , M E *gare*, *gor*, *gar*, spear
 hallowmas (v i 80), All Saints' Day , A S *halig* , L L *missa*,
 mass
 headlong (v i 65) O E *heedlinge*
 heinous (IV i 131), wicked , F *haine*, hatred
 homage (II i 204), fealty , L L *homaticum*
 impeach (I i 170), accuse , O F *empescher*, hinder
 imp out (II i 292), graft , A S *impan*
 impress (III i 25), device , L *imprimere*, to impress
 incontinent (v vi 48), fickle , L *in*, not, and *contineo*, restrain
 jade (III iii 179), hag , Ic *jalda*, mare
 jauncing (v v 94), overworking horse , O F *janer*
 journeyman (I iii 274), day worker , F *journée*, an entire day
 just (v ii 52), joust or tournament , O F *jouste*
 kern (II i 156), light armed Irish soldier , Ir *cearn*, a man
 knave (II ii 96), boy or servant , O S *cnape*, boy , G *Knabe*,
 boy
 largess (I iv 44), bounty , F *largess*, from L *largitio*, bestowal
 lief (v ii 49), soon , A S *leof*, dear
 liege (I i 7), sovereign, but should = faithful , O F *lige*, loyal
 livery (II i 204), bestowal of fief upon heir , F *livrée*
 lourg (I iii 187), gloomy , M E *loeren*, to frown
 manor (IV i 212), estate , O F *manoir*
 miscreant (I i 39), vile wretch, literally an unbeliever , O F
mescreant, unbelieving
 moe (I i 239), more in number , A S *ma*, more , more = greater
 is from A S *mara*, greater
 needs (II iii 153) of necessity A S *ned*, need

- noblesse (IV 1 119), nobleness, F *noblesse* (cf noblesse oblige)
 noisome (III IV 38), noxious, M E *noy*, hurt, as in annoy and
 E *suffix*, some
 odds (I 1 62), excess or difference (see note)
 pagan (IV 1 95), heathen, L *paganus*
 pageant (IV 1 321), show, L L *pagma*, platform.
 pale (III IV 40), staked enclosure, L *palus*, stake
 palmer (III III 151), pilgrim; L *palma*, palm tree, such as
 pilgrims brought from the Holy Land
 parasite (II II 70), hanger on, F *parasite*, from L *parasitus*,
 eater at table of another
 peer (I III 93), equal, L *par*, equal
 pelting (II 1 60), mean, cf paltry
 pill'd (II i 246), pillaged, F *pillar*
 portcullis (I III 167), grating-gate to fortress, O F *porte coulceuse*
 postern (V V 17), literally back gate, L *post*, after
 purchase (I III 282), acquire, O F *purchacer*, to pursue eagerly
 and so obtain
 recreant (I 1 144), cowardly, renegade, L *re*, again, *credo*, I
 believe
 rheum (I IV 8), tears, Gr *rheo*, I flow
 ruth (III IV 106), pity, M E *reuthe*
 sheer (V III 61), literally clear, pure, Ic *skaerr*, bright
 shrewd (III II 59), spiteful, like a shrew, A S *screawa*
 signories (III 1 22), lands belonging to signor; It *signor*, lord
 sterling (IV 1 264), a full value, A S *easter* and *ling*=Hanseatic
 Germans, the first money-changers in England.
 sullens (II 1 139), fits of temper, O F *solam*, alone
 supplant (II i 156), place underfoot, L *sub*, under, *planta*, sole.
 tender (I 1 32), holding dear, F *tendre*, tender
 tidings (II 1 272), news, Ic *tithandi*, news
 trade (III III 156), resort, A S *treden*, to tread, which accords
 with the original meaning of the word.
 trespass (I 1 138), wrong doing, O F *trespasses*, to pass across,
 i e the boundary between right and wrong.

trow (II 1 218), think , A S *treowian*, trust
 twain (I 1 50), two , A S *tuegan*
 utterance (II III 125), act of speaking , A *utian*, to send out
 vial (I II 12), phial , L *phiala*
 viol (I. III 162), musical instrument, violin , L *utula*, violin
 wallow (I III 298), roll (in mud) , A S *wealwan*
 wanton (I III 214), playful, vicious , A S *uan*, lacking, and
togen, drawn or educated
 warder (I III 118), staff of office held by the king as chief of
 the tournament , A S *weard*, guard
 wayward (II 1 142), capricious , A S *onweg*, away, and the
 suffix *ward*
 whit (II 1 103), think , A S *wiht*
 wistly (V IV 7), wistfully , M E *wisly*, surely
 wont (V V 99), habitual , A S *wunian*, to dwell
 yearn (V V 76), to become uneasy through desire , A S *geornan*,
 desire

MACMILLAN'S ENGLISH CLASSICS.

EDITED WITH INTRODUCTIONS AND NOTES

- ADDISON and STEELE**—SELECTIONS FROM THE SPECTATOR. By K Deighton 2s 6d.
—THE SPECTATOR. (Essays 1-12) By Rev J Morrison, M.A., D.D. 3s.—COVERLEY
PAPERS FROM THE SPECTATOR. Edited by K Deighton 2s
- ARNOLD**—SELECTIONS. By G C Macaulay, M.A. 2s
—SELECTIONS. WITH the addition of *Coleridge and Ruskin and Tristram and Iscalt* 2s 6d
—*SOLAR AND RUSTUM*. By F R Tomlinson, B.A. Sewed, 6d
- AYTONS LAYS**. By H B Cotterill, M.A. Sewed, 6d
- BACON**—ESSAYS. By F G Selby M.A. 3s.—ADVANCEMENT OF LEARNING. By same
Book 1. 2s.—THE NEW ATLAS. By A T Flux. Sewed 9d
- BOSWELL**—J. F. A OF A TOUR TO THE HEBRIDES. By H B Cotterill, M.A. 2s 6d.
- BUNYAN**—THE PILGRIM'S PROGRESS. By Rev J Morrison M.A., D.D. 2s
- BURKE**—REFLECTIONS ON THE FRENCH REVOLUTION. By F G Selby, M.A. 4s
—SERMONS ON AMERICAN INDIAN, ON CONCILIATION WITH AMERICA, LETTER TO THE
SHERIFFS OF BIRMINGHAM. By F G Selby M.A. 3s.—SPEECH ON CONCILIATION WITH
AMERICA. By F G Selby, M.A. 1s 9d.—THOUGHTS ON THE CAUSE OF THE PRESENT
DISCONTENTS. By F G Selby, M.A. 2s 3d
- BYRON**—CHILD HARROLD'S PILGRIMAGE. By Prof E E Morris, M.A. Cantos I and II
1s 9d (Cantos III and IV 1s)
- CAMPBELL**—SELECTIONS. By W T Webb, M.A. 2s
- CHAUCER**—THE SQUIRE'S TALE. By A W Pollard, M.A. 1s 6d
—THE PROLOGUE. By A W Pollard, M.A. 2s.—THE KNIGHT'S TALE. By A W
Pollard, M.A. 2s.—THE NUN'S PRIEST'S TALE. By A W Pollard, M.A. 1s 6d.—
THE PARAGONER'S TALE. By A W Pollard, M.A. 1s 6d
- COLUMBRIDGE**—HUMOR OF THE ANCIENT MARINER. By P T Creswell, M.A. 1s 6d
—AND GRAY—A SCIENT MARINER AND ELEGY IN A COUNTRY CHURCHYARD 1s 9d
- COWPER**—LITERS SELECTIONS FROM. By W T Webb M.A. 3s.—SHORTER POEMS
By W T Webb, M.A. 2s
- DEKKER**—THE SHOEMAKER'S HOLIDAY. By W J Halliway, M.A. 2s
- DRYDEN**—SERMONS. By J Churton Collins M.A. 2s
—THE HIND AND THE PANTHER. By Prof W H Williams 2s
- ELIOT, GEORGE**—SCENTS OF CLERICAL LIFE. By M Macmillan, D Litt. 2s 6d
- ENGLISH IDEALS** SELECTIONS FROM ENGLISH PROSE AND VERSE. By M P Hansen,
M.A., and A Hart, M.A. 2s 6d
- ENGLISH POETRY**—FROM BLAKE TO ARNOLD (1783-1853) With Introduction by G J
Benson, M.A. Edited by J P P Ckburn and J le Gay Brereton 2s 6d
- EMERSON**—THE TRAVELLER AND THE DESPOTIC VILLAGE. By Arthur Barrett, B.A.
1s 9d Separately Sewed 1s each
- THE TRAVELLER AND THE DESPOTIC VILLAGE. By Prof. J W Hales. Sewed, 9d
- VOICES OF WAKEFIELD. By Michael Macmillan, D Litt. 2s 6d
- ESSAYS. Selected by C D Yonge, M.A. 2s 6d
- GRAY**—POEMS. By John Bradshaw LL.D. 2s ELEGY IN A COUNTRY CHURCHYARD
and Ode on Spring. Sewed, 6d.
- GRAY**—ESSAYS WRITTEN IN THE INTERVALS OF BUSINESS. By F J Rowe, M.A., and W T
Webb, M.A. 2s
- HUMES**—THE AUTOGRAPH OF THE BREAKFAST TABLE. By J Downie, M.A. 2s 6d
- HUNSON**—Lives of the Poets—SIX CHIEF LIVES. By M Arnold 3s 6d.—MILTON. By
K Deighton. 2s.—DRYDEN. By P Peterson 2s.—POPE. By P Peterson 2s
- HUSLEY, CHARLES**—WESTWARD HO! With Notes 3s 6d.—HITHERWARD THE WAKE
With Notes 2s 6d
- JOHN**—THE ESSAYS OF ELIA. First Series. By N L Hallward, M.A., and S C Hill B.A.
2s. Second Series. By the same editors 2s 6d.—TALES FROM SHAKESPEARE.
Selections. By C D Punchard. First Series. The Tempest, As You Like It,
The Merchant of Venice, King Lear, Macbeth, Twelfth Night, Hamlet, Othello
Second Series. A Midsummer Night's Dream, The Winter's Tale, Much Ado about
Nothing, Macbeth, The Taming of the Shrew, The Comedy of Errors Othello
1s. 6d each
- JOHN**—ENGLISH POEMS.—By J W Hales, M.A. 3s 6d
- KEELOW**—THE SONG OF HIAWATHA. By H B Cotterill, M.A. 1s. 9d.
- EVANGELINE. By H B Cotterill M.A. 1s 9d
- MACMILLAN**—LAYS OF ANCIENT ROME. By W T Webb, M.A. 2s 3d.—LIFE OF SAMUEL

- by W Macmillan, M A 1s 9d
- MILTON**—PARADISE LOST Books I and II By M Macmillan, D Litt 2s 3d F
I IV, separately 1s 6d each—LYCIDAS, SONNETS, &c By W Bell M A
NATIVIT Y ODE, LYCIDAS, SONNETS, &c By W Bell, M A 2s 6d—COMUS NAT
ODE L'ALICRO, IL PENSEROSO, LYCIDAS, SONNETS, &c By the same 3s—
By the same 1s 9d—LYCIDAS AND COMUS By the same 2s—AROPAGITICA
H B Cotterill M A 2s—SAMSON AGONISTES By H M Percival, M A 2s
SAMSON AGONISTES By H M Percival, M A, and ENGLISH SONNETS By W
M A 8s—TRACTATE OF EDUCATION By F F Morris M A 1s 9d
- MORE**—THE UTOPIA OF SIR THOMAS MORE By H B Cotterill, M A 2s 6d
- PALGRAVE**—GOLDEN TREASURY OF SONGS AND LYRICS Book I By J H Fowler,
1s 9d Book II By J H Fowler, M A 2s 3d Book III By J H Fowler,
2s Book IV By J H Fowler, M A 2s 4d—Book V (Nineteenth Cent
Selected by Laurence Binyon Edited by J H Fowler M A 2s 8d. Note
Books I to V 3s 6d
- POEMS OF ENGLAND** A Selection of English Patriotic Poetry By Rev H B Ge
M A, and A Sidgwick, M A
- POPE**—ESSAY ON MAN Epistles I IV By Prof F E Morris, M A 1s 9d
—ESSAY ON CRITICISM By J C Collins M A 1s 6d
—THE RAPE OF THE LOCK By B Groom, M A Sewed, 1s
- REPRESENTATIVE ENGLISH POEMS** Selected and edited by G S Brett 2s
- SCOTT**—THE LADY OF THE LAKE By G H Stuart, M A 2s 6d THE LAY OF THE
MINSTREL By G H Stuart, M A, and E H Elliot P A 2s 6d—CANTOS
1s 6d Sewed, 1s—MARMION By M Macmillan, D Litt, 8s—LOKKY By
same 3s—THE LORD OF THE ISLES By H B Cotterill, M A 2s 6d—QUEEN
INWARD, KEVILWORTH, WOODSTOCK, THE TALISMAN, FORTUNES OF M
IVANHOE, OLD MORTALITY, HEART OF MID LOTHIAN ROB ROY 3s 6d each
LEGEND OF MONTROSE, 2s 6d—GUY MANNERING By R F Wrench M A 3s
- SELECTED POEMS** from Gray, Burns, Cowper, Moore, Longfellow By H B Cot
M A Sewed 1s
- SHAKESPEARE**—The Plays Edited by E Deighton—THE TEMPEST 2s—MCC
ABOUT NOTHING 2s—A MIDSUMMER NIGHT'S DREAM 2s—THE MERCHANT
VENICE 2s—AS YOU LIKE IT 2s—TWELFTH NIGHT 2s—THE WINTERS
2s—KING JOHN 2s—JULIUS CAESAR 2s—THE TITUS 2s—HENRY IV
II 2s—HENRY V 2s—HENRY VIII 2s—THE FOUR ANDS 2s—ROMEO AND J
2s—JULIUS CAESAR 2s—MACBETH 2s—HAMLET 2s—THE GILFAR 2s—OT
2s—ANTONY AND CLEOPATRA 2s—CYMBELINE, PART I GENTLEMAN OF VERON
—RICHARD III By C H Tawdey M A 2s
- SOUTHEY**—LIFE OF NELSON By W Macmillan, D Litt 3s
- SPENSER**—THE FAIRY QUEENE Book I By H M Percival M A 2s 6d
—THE SHEPHERD'S CALENDAR By Prof C H Herford, Litt D 2s 6d
- STEELE**—SELECTIONS FROM THE TATLER By Prof L E Steele, M A 2s
- TENNYSON**—SELECTIONS By F J Rowe, M A, and W T Webb, M A 2s 6d
separately 1s 6d—THE LOTOS-EATERS, ULYSSES, &c By the same 2s 6d—Y
AND OTHER POEMS By the same 2s—CENOBIA AND OTHER POEMS By the
1s 9d—MORRIS D'ARTHEUR By the same Sewed, 6d—THE PASSING OF
By F J Rowe, M A 1s—THE COMING OF ARTHUR, THE PASSING OF ARTHUR;
F J Rowe M A 1s 9d—THE COMING OF ARTHUR THE PASSING OF ARTHUR;
AND LYNETTE By F J Rowe, M A, and G C Macaulay, M A 2s 6d—LA
AND LYNETTE By F J Rowe M A 1s 9d—ENOCH ARDEN By W T Web
2s 6d—BOLNHEIM'S FIELD By W T Webb M A 1s 9d—THE PRINCES
F M WALLACE, M A 2s 6d—GARRETH AND LYNETTE By G C Macaulay, M A
—THE MARRIAGE OF GERAINT GERAINT AND ENID By G C Macaulay, M A 1
THE HOLY GRAIL By G C Macaulay, M A 1s 9d—GUINEVERE By G C Ma
M A 1s 9d—IDYLLS OF THE KING (Text only) 2s—IDYLLS OF THE KING
Books By J H Fowler, M A 3s—SELECTED POEMS By H B George and Sir
Madaw 2s 6d—THE CUP By H B Cotterill, M A 1s—IN MEMORIAM By
Macmillan M A 2s—ENGLISH IDYLLS AND OTHER POEMS By J H Fowler M
—THE LAY OF SHAELOTT AND OTHER POEMS By J H Fowler, M A 1s 9d
—LAYS OF SHAELOTT, THE LOTOS-EATERS (ENOBIA, ULYSSES, LANCELOT AND BLA
—THE LAY OF ARTHUR By F J Rowe, M A, and W T Webb, M A 2s 6d.
- THE FAIRY QUEENE**—Remond With Notes 2s

